



bizhub pro C5501

User's Guide — Copier

Contents

1	Intro	duction/Safety information	
	1.1	Composition of user's guide	
	1.2	Energy Star®	
	1.3	License	
	1.4	Available features	
	1.5	Legal restrictions on copying	
	1.6	For EU member states only	
	1.7	Safety information	
	1.8	Regulation notices	
	1.9	Caution notations and labels	
	1.10	Space requirements	
	1.11	Operation precautions	1-39
2	Prepa	aration for use	
	2.1	Machine configuration	2-3
	2.2	Turning on/off the power	
	2.3	Automatically returning to the default settings: Auto reset	
	2.4	To use machine when power save LED lights	
	2.5	Making user authentication	2-17
3	Pape	r and original information	
	3.1	Paper information	3-3
	3.2	Original information	3-9
4	Supp	lies & handling	
	4.1	Loading paper	4-3
	4.2	Loading tabbed sheets	
	4.3	Adding toner	
	4.4	Exchanging toner recovery box	
	4.5	Replenishing staples	
	4.6	Disposing punch waste	
5	Troul	oleshooting	
	5.1	If "Please Call Service C-####" message is displayed	5-9
	5.2	Clearing mishandled paper	
	5.3	If [MACHINE] tab blinks in orange	
	5.4	If "Memory Full" message is displayed: Memory overflow	
	5.5	If power off/on screen is displayed	
	5.6	Troubleshooting tips	
6	Main	tenance	
	6.1	Cleaning the machine	6-3
	6.2	Checking copy count	
	6.3	Preventive maintenance	6-7

7	Speci	fications	
	7.1	Main body specifications	7-3
	7.2	Option specifications	7-5
8	Befor	e making copies	
	8.1	Control panel and basic screens	8-3
	8.1.1	Control panel	8-3
	8.1.2	Copy screen	8-5
	8.1.3	Machine status screen	8-7
	8.2	General copy operation	8-8
	8.3	Positioning the original	8-11
	8.3.1	Positioning originals into the ADF	8-11
	8.3.2	Positioning the original on original glass	8-13
	8.4	Setting print quantity	8-14
	8.5	Setting job during warmup	8-15
	8.6	To stop scanning/printing	8-17
9	Basic	job settings	
	9.1	Original setting	9-3
	9.1.1	Selecting binding direction of the original: Bind direction	
	9.1.2	Specifying orientation of the original: Direction	
	9.1.3	Specifying original type: Image/type	
	9.1.4	Copying mixed size originals: Mixed	
	9.1.5	Copying Z-folded original: Z-folded	
	9.1.6	Specifying original thickness: Thickness	
	9.1.7	Copying non-standard size original: Custom	
	9.1.8	Copying tabbed originals: Tab paper	9-15
	9.2	Separate scan mode	9-16
	9.3	Selecting color mode	9-18
	9.4	Zoom	9-19
	9.4.1	Copying in 1.000 magnification mode	9-19
	9.4.2	Changing magnification ratio	9-20
	9.4.3	Setting magnification ratio automatically: Auto zoom	9-22
	9.5	Simplex/duplex setting	9-23
	9.5.1	Making double-sided copies using ADF	9-23
	9.5.2	Making double-sided copies using original glass	9-26
	9.5.3	Making single-sided copies from double-sided originals	9-28
	9.6	Paper setting	9-30
	9.6.1	Selecting paper size automatically: Auto paper select	9-31
	9.6.2	Turning on/off the rotation	
	9.6.3	Using paper not specified to any tray: Paper setting	9-33
	9.6.4	Improving unevenness on large-sized paper or feedability of small-sized thick paper in duplex printing	9-43
	9.7	Setting reserve job	
	9.8	Copy conditions incompatible with basic job settings	9-46
10	Color	adjustment	
	10.1	About colors	
	10.2	Color copy quality	
	10.3	Adjusting density level	
	10.4	Changing colors using RGB values	
	10.5	Changing colors using HSB values	
	10.6	Adjusting sharpness	10-27

11-411-1111-1211-2211-23
11-411-1111-1211-2211-23
11-411-1111-1211-2211-23
11-1 ⁻¹ 11-1 ⁻¹ 11-1 ⁻¹ 11-1 ⁻¹ 11-2 ⁻¹ 11-2 ⁻¹ 11-2 ⁻¹ 11-2 ⁻¹
11-13 11-15 11-25 11-26 11-29 11-3
11-19 11-29 11-29 11-29 11-3
11-22 11-20 11-29 11-3
11-29 11-3
11-3 [.]
11-33
11-34
11-34
11-37
11-39
11-42
11-43
11-46
11-48
11-50
11-52
11-54
11-56
11-58
11-60
11-62
11-64
11-67
11-69
11-73
12-3
12-
12-6
12-8
12-9
12-1 ⁻
12-13
12-1
12-17
12-18
12-20
12-22
12-23

	12.5	Cover sheet feeding (Paper inserter)	
	12.6	Using Finisher FS-520/FS-607 manually	
	12.7	Copy conditions incompatible with output applications	12-30
13	Advan	ced information	
	13.1	Checking feature selections before copying: Mode check	13-3
	13.2	Making sample set for checking results: Proof copy	13-6
	13.3	Interrupting job in progress: Interrupt mode	13-7
	13.4	Storing and recalling job conditions: Mode memory	13-8
	13.4.1	Storing job conditions	13-8
	13.4.2	Recalling stored job settings	13-10
	13.5	Recalling previous job settings	13-11
	13.6	Displaying screen for operation guide: Help mode	13-12
	13.7	Adjusting response time of touch keys: Accessibility	13-13
	13.8	Controlling copier from browser: Remote panel	13-14
14	Job m	anagement	
	14.1	Overview of job list screen	14-3
	14.2	Job operation on job list screen	14-4
	14.2.1	To check/control reserved jobs	14-4
	14.2.2	To display output history	14-5
	14.2.3	To display send history	14-6
	14.2.4	To check incomplete jobs	14-7
	14.2.5	To check/operate suspended jobs	14-8
15	Index		

1

Introduction/Safety information

1 Introduction/Safety information

Thank you for choosing this machine.

This guide contains details on the operation of the various functions of the machine, precautions on its use, and basic troubleshooting procedures. In order to ensure that this machine is used correctly and efficiently, carefully read this guide before using the machine. After reading the guide, store it in the designated holder so that it can easily be referred to when questions or problems arise during operation.

The illustrations used in this guide may appear slightly different from views of the actual equipment.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS:

- KONICA MINOLTA, KONICA MINOLTA Logo, and The essentials of imaging are registered trademarks or trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA HOLDINGS, INC.
- bizhub PRO is registered trademark of KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, Inc.

Copyright © 2008 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, Inc.

EXEMPTION

- No part of this guide may be used or duplicated without permission.
- Manufacturer and Sales Company will have no liability for any influences caused by using the printing system and this user's guide.
- The information written in this user's guide is subject to change without prior notice.



1.1 Composition of user's guide

This machine is provided with the following user's guides as printed matters.

bizhub PRO C5501 User's guide - Copier (This book)

This guide describes an outline of the machine and copy operations.

Please refer to this guide for safety information, turning on/off the machine, paper supply, dealing with machine trouble such as paper jam, and copy operation available on the machine.

bizhub PRO C5501 User's guide - POD Administrator's reference

This guide provides you with detailed information about the machine management and how to customize the machine according to your daily use.

Please refer to this guide for a setup and management of the machine including copy paper setting, tray setting, and a network setup.

bizhub PRO C5501 User's guide - Security

This guide describes the security functions.

Please refer to this guide for how to use the Security Strengthen mode, and for detailed machine operation in Security Strengthen mode.

To operate safely, be sure to read "1 Introduction/Safety information" in "bizhub PRO C5501 User's guide - Copier" before using the machine.

1-4 bizhub PRO C5501



1.2 Energy Star®



The ENERGY STAR® Program has been established to encourage the widespread and voluntary use of energy efficient technologies that reduce energy consumption and prevent pollution.

As an ENERGY STAR Partner, we have determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency, based on the following features.

Auto low power

Auto Low Power conserves energy by lowering the set temperature of the fixing unit. This function is set to OFF (not used) as factory default.

The time period for the Auto Low Power function can be set for 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, 90 minutes, 120 minutes, or 240 minutes. This power saving function operates automatically when specified time period has elapsed after completion of the last copy, with the copier remaining in the ready to copy state during that time.

Automatic shut-off

This function achieves further energy conservation by partially turning the power supply OFF, thereby reducing energy consumption to 8.2 W or less. In the standard setting, Automatic Shut-Off follows Auto Low Power, operating automatically when 1 minute has elapsed after completion of the last copy, with the copier remaining in the ready to copy state during that time. The time period for the Automatic Shut-Off function can be set for 1 minute, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, 90 minutes, 120 minutes or 240 minutes. This function can be disabled in the user setting or Machine Administrator setting.

Automatic duplex copying

To reduce paper consumption, use this function to make double-sided (duplex) copies, automatically.

We recommend that you utilize the Auto Low Power function, the Automatic Shut-Off function, and the Automatic Duplex Copying function.



1.3 License

For Information on Incorporated Softwares

The softwares installed in this product comprise various independent software modules and components. Each software module or component is copyrighted by the author, i.e. the one we wrote will be copywrited by us, and others will also be copywrited by each author.

This product uses some free softwares as a part of software components.

The following is information on the end user license agreement provided to the software components included in this product.

Using TimeSys Linux

As an operating system, this machine uses TimeSys Linux 4.0 distributed by TimeSys Corporation in the Unite States. For details of the OS, please contact directly to TimeSys Corporation or their sales representative.

http://www.timesys.com/

About License Granted to Each Software Component

The GPL, LGPL, or OpenSSL license is granted to some of the software components included in this product. Grateful acknowledgements are due to the authors of those softwares, and to members of the community being engaged in data management and other activities concerning the softwares.

The GPL/LGPL is, as mentioned below, designed to guarantee (or even responsible for) the users that they can receive the source code whenever they want. For details, please refer to our homepage. http://konicaminolta.com/opensource/

As for our software components, we hope you understand that the source code cannot be provided because they need not be open.

Here is a copy of the original text of the GPL, LGPL, and Open SSL licence granted to the software components included in this product.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE (Version 2, June 1991)

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software-to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights.

These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

1-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program).

Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

- 1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.
 - You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.
- 2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
 - a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
 - b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
 - c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.



- 3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
 - a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.
- 6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein.
 - You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
- 7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

1-8 bizhub PRO C5501

- 8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.
 - Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.
- 10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

- 11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- 12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE (Version 2.1, February 1999)

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages-typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.



To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

1-10 bizhub PRO C5501

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

- You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.
- 2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
 - a) The modified work must itself be a software library.
 - b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
 - c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
 - d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.



- 4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.
 - If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.
- 5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License.

Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

- 6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications. You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:
 - a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)
 - b) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.
 - c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.
 - d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.
 - e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

1-12 bizhub PRO C5501

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

- 7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:
 - a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.
 - b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.
- 8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.
- 10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein.
 - You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.
- 11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

- 12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- 13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time.
 - Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.



Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

- 15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING. REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- 16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>

Copyright (C) < year> < name of author>

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990

Ty Coon, President of Vice

That's all there is to it!

1-14 bizhub PRO C5501

LICENSE ISSUES

The OpenSSL toolkit stays under a dual license, i.e. both the conditions of the OpenSSL License and the original SSLeay license apply to the toolkit.

See below for the actual license texts. Actually both licenses are BSD-style Open Source licenses. In case of any license issues related to OpenSSL please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

OpenSSL License

Copyright (c) 1998-2005 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
 - "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"
- 4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
- 5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
- 6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

 "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.



- 3. All ac
 - 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related.
 - 4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

1-16 bizhub PRO C5501

1.4 Available features

Auto zoom

Automatically selects an appropriate magnification ratio when paper size is selected manually. Automatically selected when [Auto Zoom] is touched.

Auto paper select

Automatically selects copy paper size to match the original documents.

Auto low power

Automatically lowers the power after a specified period of copier inactivity.

Auto reset

Automatically resets to the default settings after a specified period of copier inactivity.

Auto shut-off

Automatically shuts off the power after a specified period of copier inactivity.

Book copy

Copies both pages of an open book or book-size sheet separately onto two letter sheets in 1-1 mode or separately onto each side of one letter sheet in 1-2 mode. You can use the Book Copy mode with the Front or Front/Back cover mode. The cover page(s) will be scanned and copied normally before image division is performed on the other pages.

Booklet pagination

Creates a multiple page signature booklet copied on both sides of paper in 1-2 or 2-2 copy mode.

Chapters

Starts chapter pages on the right side (front pages) of the finished document. Only duplex mode (1-2) is compatible with this feature.

Color mode

Copies full-colored originals or makes single-colored copies, and also adjusts image quality of the copies.

Combine originals

Copies a fixed number (2, 4, or 8) of pages onto one sheet of copy paper to create a draft copy of a multipage report at the same time as saving paper.

Copy density

Manually selects up to 9 density levels.

Custom size in original setting

Identifies the special original size which the machine cannot detect, in order to select the optimal paper size for copying or printing.

Frame center erase

Erases border and/or fold image area using Frame (1 - 300 mm), Center (1 - 99 mm), or Frame & Center.

Image centering

The original image on the original glass or in the document feeder is copied and centered on a sheet.

Image overlay

Scans an original image and overlays it on the pages of another document. For example, you may want to incorporate a page heading, graphic design or logo into the pages of your document.



Image repeat

Selects the horizontal image area across the page, and repeats it down the page as many times as the repeat width setting $(10 \sim 150 \, \text{mm})$ permits in manual or auto.

Insert image

Stores pages in memory from the original glass, and inserts the pages into a document copied from the document feeder.

Insert sheet

Insert up to 26 blank or copied sheets from any tray, or inserts blank or copied front and back covers from any tray to enhance the presentation of multi-page documents.

Interrupt copying

Interrupts copying-in-progress to perform an urgent copy, using any of the copier features for the interrupt job.

Job list

Displays the Job List Screen to view the current machine status, changes the operation order of reserve jobs, deletes the unused reserve job, or displays the previous job list.

Manual shut-off

Shuts off the machine power when pressing [Power Save] on the control panel.

Mixed in original setting

Copies mixed size originals from the document feeder in Auto Paper Select or Auto Zoom mode. Auto Paper Select automatically selects the paper size of each original. Auto Zoom mode allows you to select one paper size for all originals.

Mode memory

Programs up to 30 jobs and recalls each job by job number, as needed. All compatible original glass functions can be programmed into Mode Memory directly after they are selected.

Multi-page enlargement

Makes an enlarged copy of an original by dividing to several page.

Neg./pos. reverse

Reverses the image from black-on-white to white-on-black or vice versa.

Non-image area erase

When copying from the original glass when the document cover is open, copies only the image area and not the exposed area of glass, which would otherwise copy as black.

Output for finisher FS-520/FS-607 with Paper inserter PI-502

Cover sheet feeding Off Line Finisher mode

Output for machine with Finisher FS-520 installed

Non-Sort, Collate, Uncollate, and Staple modes using the primary (main) tray Collate and Uncollate modes using the secondary (sub) tray Selects an output mode and output tray (for Collate and Uncollate) on the Output Application Screen.

Output for machine with Finisher FS-607 installed

Non-Sort, Collate, Uncollate, and Staple modes using the primary (main) tray Collated and Uncollate modes using the secondary (sub) tray Fold&Staple, Multi Half Fold, and Multi Tri-Fold modes using the folding mode tray Selects an output mode and output tray (for Collate and Uncollate) on the Output Application Screen.

1-18 bizhub PRO C5501



Page margin

Creates or removes a binding margin at the top, bottom, right and left edges (shift amount from $0 \sim 250$ mm, in 1 mm increments); reduces image to prevent image loss (reduce & shift amount from $0 \sim 250$ mm, in 1 mm increments).

Program overlay

Same as for Image Overlay except the overlay image is stored in memory.

Power save

Automatically turns off all but nominal power supply after a specified period of copier inactivity, for optimal efficiency. Power is returned after a brief warm up period by pressing [Power Save] on the control panel.

Program job

Scans documents into memory while designating different copy conditions for each original, then prints all the documents collectively.

Proof copy

To ensure correct output before running multiple copies, run a proof copy by pressing [Proof Copy] on the control panel or touching Proof Copy on the Check Screen.

Reserve

Scans in subsequent copy jobs while the machine is busy printing or copying.

Rotation

Rotates the image before copying when the portrait/landscape orientation of the original is different from the orientation of the copy paper.

Separate scan mode

Scans documents into memory from the original glass and/or the document feeder and inserts the pages into another document copied from the document feeder. If an incompatible function is selected in this mode, the latter function will not be selected, and an Error message will be displayed.

Simplex/duplex

Selects the desired simplex mode (1-1 or 2-1); or duplex mode (1-2 or 2-2).

Stamp

Prints stamp (Built-in Stamp, Set Numbering, Page No., Date/Time) and watermark (Watermark, Set Numbering, Copy Protect) onto the output copies to enhance the presentation and usefulness of the copies.

Staple

Selects the stapling position and number of staples.

Tab paper

Copies onto tabbed sheets from tabbed originals, allowing the image on the tab part of the original to be printed on the same part of the tabbed copy paper.

Weekly timer

Can be set according to the needs of each work environment. Turns main body power Off/On daily or weekly, during lunch time, on holidays, and also enables the Timer Interrupt mode, which allows temporary use of the machine even when the machine is in the daily, weekly, or holiday Off mode.

Zoom

Selects fixed ratios, four reduction, four enlargement, and three user-set ratios. Zoom ratios can be selected from $25\% \sim 400\%$ in 0.1% increments.



1.5 Legal restrictions on copying

Certain types of original must never be copied with the purpose or intent to pass copies of such documents off as the originals.

The following is not a complete list, but is meant to be used as a guide to responsible copying.

<Financial Instruments>

- Personal checks
- Traveler's checks
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates

<Legal Documents>

- Food stamps
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Checks or drafts drawn by government agencies
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Motor vehicle licenses and titles.
- House and property titles and deeds

<General>

- Identification cards, badges, or insignias
- Copyrighted works without permission of the copyright owner

In addition, *it is prohibited under any circumstances* to copy domestic or foreign currencies, or works of art without permission of the copyright owner.

When in doubt about the nature of a document, consult with legal counsel.

This machine provides the section management function to forbid the user operating the machine without entering a pre-established password, in order to prevent any misapplication of the machine.

Also, this section management function can limit the machine operation depending on the section, using the setting to permit/prohibit copying, printing, or scanning.

This machine also provides the forgery prevention function in order to prevent financial instruments from being copied illegally.

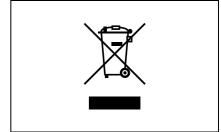
We appreciate your understanding that the copied image may have some noise due to this forgery prevention function.

1-20 bizhub PRO C5501

1.6 For EU member states only

This symbol means: Do not dispose of this product together with your household waste!

Please refer to the information of your local community or contact our dealers regarding the proper handling of end-of-life electric and electronic equipment. Recycling of this product will help to conserve natural resources and prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health caused by inappropriate waste handling.





1.7 Safety information

This section contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To achieve optimum utility of this device, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this guide.

Please read the following section before connecting the machine to the supply. It contains important information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Please keep this guide in a handy place near the machine.

Make sure you observe all of the precautions appear in each section of this guide.



Note

Some parts of the contents of this section may not correspond with the purchased product.

Warning and precaution symbols

The following indicators are used on the warning labels or in this guide to categorize the level of safety warnings.



♠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.



CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Meaning of symbols

Symbol	Meaning	Example	Meaning
\triangle	A triangle indicates a danger against which you should take precaution.		This symbol warns against possible causes of burns.
\bigcirc	A diagonal line indicates a prohibited course of action.	®	This symbol warns against dismantling the device.
	A solid circle indicates an imperative course of action.		This symbol indicates you must unplug the device.

1-22 bizhub PRO C5501

Disassemble and modification



♠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Do not attempt to remove the covers and panels which have been fixed to the product. Some products have a high-voltage part or a laser beam source inside that could cause an electrical shock or blindness.	
Do not modify this product, as a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown could result. If the product employs a laser, the laser beam source could cause blindness.	®

Power cord



⚠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
 Use only the power cord supplied in the package. If a power cord is not supplied use the power cord and plug that is specified in POWER CORD INSTRUCTION. F to use this cord could result in a fire or electrical shock. 	
Use the power cord supplied in the package only for this machine and NEVER usefor any other product. Failure to observe this precaution could result in a fire or trical shock.	
 Do not scratch, abrade, place a heavy object on, heat, twist, bend, pull on, or dat the power cord. Use of a damaged power cord (exposed core wire, broken wire, could result in a fire or breakdown. Should any of these conditions be found, immediately turn OFF the power switc plug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service resentative. 	etc.) h, un-



Power source



№ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Use only the specified power source voltage. Failure to do that could result in a fire or electrical shock.	0
 Connect power plug directly into wall outlet having the same configuration as the plug. Use of an adapter leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or shock. If proper wall outlet is not available, the customer shall ask qualified electrician for the installation. 	0
Do not use a multiple outlet adapter nor an extension cord in principle. Use of an adapter or an extension cord could cause a fire or electrical shock. Contact your authorized service representative if an extension cord is required.	\Diamond
Consult your authorized service representative before connecting other equipment on the same wall outlet. Overload could result in a fire.	0



⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
The outlet must be near the equipment and easily accessible. Otherwise you can not pull out the power plug when an emergency occurs.	0

Power plug



♠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Do not unplug and plug in the power cord with a wet hand, as an electrical shock could result.	
Plug the power cord all the way into the power outlet. Failure to do this could result in a fire or electrical shock.	0



⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
Do not tug the power cord when unplugging. Pulling on the power cord could damage the cord, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.	\Diamond
Remove the power plug from the outlet more than one time a year and clean the area between the plug terminals. Dust that accumulates between the plug terminals may cause a fire.	0

Grounding



WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Connect the power cord to an electrical outlet that is equipped with a grounding terminal.	•

Installation



♠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Do not place a flower vase or other container that contains water, or metal clips or other small metallic objects on this product. Spilled water or metallic objects dropped inside the product could result in a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown. Should a piece of metal, water, or any other similar foreign matter get inside the product, immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative.	



CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
After installing this product, mount it on a secure base. If the unit moves or falls, it may cause personal injury.	0
Do not place the product in a dusty place, or a site exposed to soot or steam, near a kitchen table, bath, or a humidifier. A fire, electrical shock, or breakdown could result.	\Diamond
Do not place this product on an unstable or tilted bench, or in a location subject to a lot of vibration and shock. It could drop or fall, causing personal injury or mechanical breakdown.	\Diamond
Do not let any object plug the ventilation holes of this product. Heat could accumulate inside the product, resulting in a fire or malfunction.	\Diamond
Do not use flammable sprays, liquids, or gases near this product, as a fire could result.	\Diamond

Ventilation



CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
 Always use this product in a well ventilated location. Operating the product in a poorly ventilated room for an extended period of time could injure your health. Ventilate the room at regular intervals. 	0

Actions in response to troubles



♠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
 Do not keep using this product, if this product becomes inordinately hot or emits smoke, or unusual odor or noise. Immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative If you keep on using it as is, a fire or electrical shock could result. 	
 Do not keep using this product, if this product has been dropped or its cover damaged Immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and then call your authorized service representative. If you keep on using it as is, a fire or electrical shock could result. 	



↑ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
 The inside of this product has areas subject to high temperature, which may cause burns. When checking the inside of the unit for malfunctions such as a paper misfeed, do not touch the locations (around the fusing unit, etc.) which are indicated by a "Caution HOT" caution label. 	

Consumables



⚠ WARNING

Ignoring these warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
Do not throw the toner cartridge or toner into an open flame. The hot toner may scatter and cause burns or other damage.	\Diamond



CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Ca	aution	Symbol
•	Do not leave a toner unit or drum unit in a place within easy reach of children. Licking or ingesting any of these things could injure your health.	\Diamond
•	Do not store toner units and PC drum units near a floppy disk or watch that are susceptible to magnetism. They could cause these products to malfunction.	\Diamond

1-27 bizhub PRO C5501

When moving the machine



⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
 Whenever moving this product, be sure to disconnect the power cord and other ca- bles. Failure to do this could damage the cord or cable, resulting in a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown. 	
When moving this product, always hold it by the locations specified in the user's guide or other documents. If the unit falls it may cause severe personal injury. The product may also be damaged or malfunction.	0

Before successive holidays



CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

Do not ignore these safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
Unplug the product when you will not use the product for long periods of time.	E

1-28 bizhub PRO C5501

1.8 Regulation notices

CE Marking (Declaration of Conformity) for Users of the European Union (EU)

This product complies with the following EU directives: 89/336/EEC, 73/23/EEC and 93/68/EEC directives.

This declaration is valid for the area of the European Union.

This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under CISPR rules and local rules.

USER INSTRUCTIONS FCC PART 15 - RADIO FREQUENCY DEVICES (For U.S.A. Users)

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

A

WARNING

The design and production of this unit conform to FCC regulations, and any changes or modifications must be registered with the FCC and are subject to FCC control. Any changes made by the purchaser or user without first contacting the manufacturer will be subject to penalty under FCC regulations.

→ This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under FCC rules.

INTERFERENCE-CAUSING EQUIPMENT STANDARD (ICES-003 ISSUE 4) (For Canada Users)

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

For Users in countries not subject to Class B regulations



WARNING

Interference with radio communications:

- → This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.
- → This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under CISPR rules and local rules.



Laser safety

For European users

M

CAUTION

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this guide may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

- → This product employs a Class 3B laser diode having maximum power of 15 mW and wavelength of 775 - 800 nm.
- This product is certified as a Class 1 laser product. Since the laser beam is concealed by protective housings, the product does not emit hazardous laser radiation as long as the product is operated according to the instructions in this guide.

For Denmark users



ADVARSEL

Dette er en halvlederlaser.

→ Usynlig laserstråling ved åbning, når sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude af funktion. Undgå udsættelse for stråling. Klasse 1 laser produkt der opfylder IEC 60825 sikkerheds kravene.

Dette er en halvlederlaser. Laserdiodens højeste styrke er 15 mW og bølgelængden er 775-800 nm.

For Norway users



ADVARSEL!

Dette en halvleder laser.

→ Dersom apparatet brukes på annen måte enn spesifisert i denne bruksanvisning, kan brukeren utsettes for unsynlig laserstråling som overskrider grensen for laser klass 1.

Dette en halvleder laser. Maksimal effekt till laserdiode er 15 mW og bøkgelengde er 775-800 nm.

For Finland, Sweden users

LOUKAN 1 LASERLAITE KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT



VAROITUS

Tämä on puolijohdelaser.

→ Laitteen Käyttäminen muulla kuin tässä käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

Tämä on puolijohdelaser. Laserdiodin sunrin teho on 15 mW ja aallonpituus on 775-800 nm.



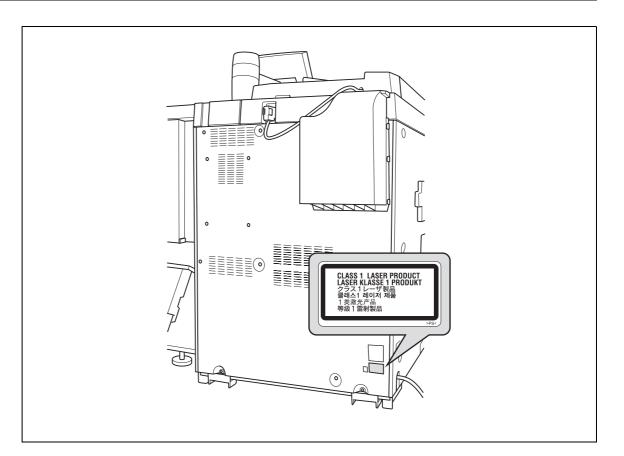
VARNING

Det här är en halvledarlaser.

→ Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i denna bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

Det här är en halvledarlaser. Den maximala effekten för laserdioden är 15 mW och våglängden är 775-800 nm.

1-30 bizhub PRO C5501





Ozone release

M

CAUTION

Locate the machine in a well ventilated room

→ A negligible amount of ozone is generated during normal operation of this machine. An unpleasant odor may, however, be created in poorly ventilated rooms during extensive machine operations. For a comfortable, healthy, and safe operating environment, it is recommended that the room well ventilated.

W

ATTENTION

Placer l'appareil dans une pièce largement ventilée.

→ Une quantité d'ozone négligable est dégagée pendant le fonctionnement de l'appareil quand celui-ci est utilisé normalement. Cependant, une odeur désagréable peut être ressentie dans les pièces dont l'aération est insuffisante et lorsque une utilisation prolongée de l'appareil est effectuée. Pour avoir la certitude de travailler dans un environnement réunissant des conditions de confort, santé et de sécurité, il est préférable de bien aérer la pièce ou se trouve l'appareil.

Acoustic noise (For European Users Only)

Maschinenlärminformations-Verordnung 3. GPSGV: Der höchste Schalldruckpegel beträgt 70 dB(A) oder weniger gemäss EN ISO 7779.

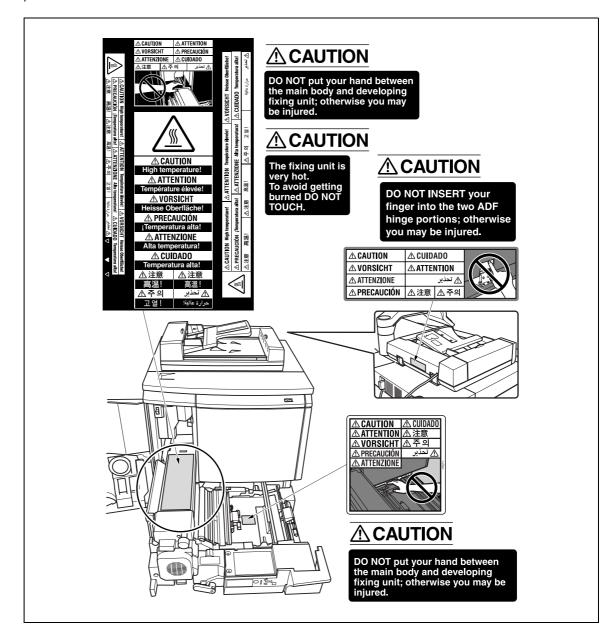
1-32 bizhub PRO C5501

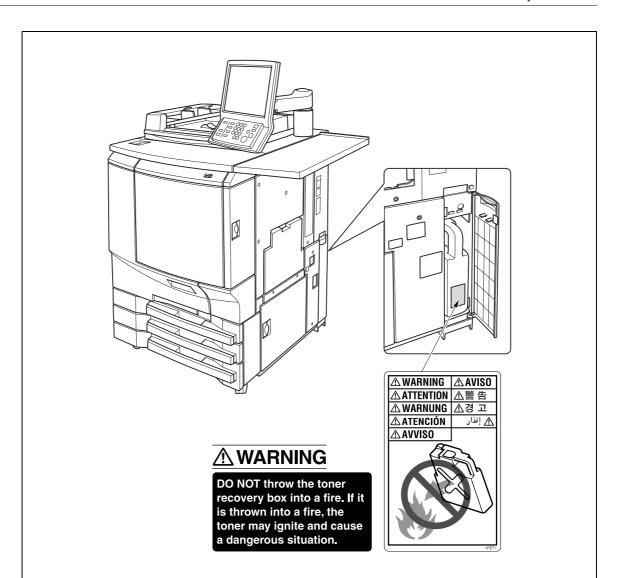


1.9 Caution notations and labels

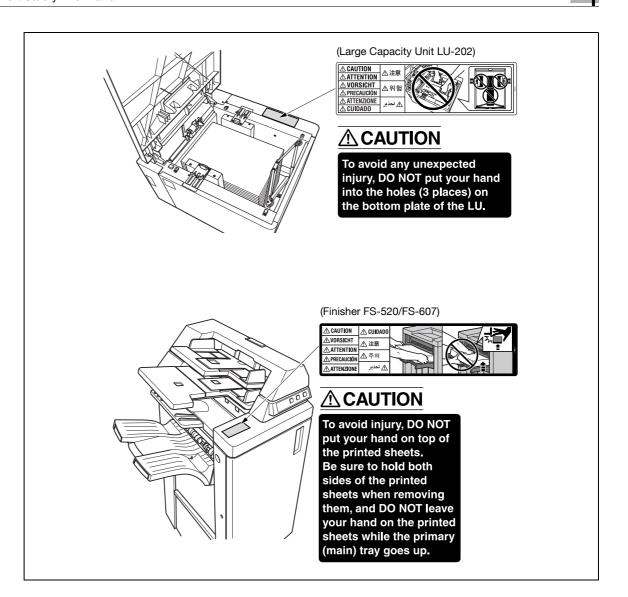
Safety precaution notations and labels appear on this machine at the following positions.

Be very careful that an accident does not occur when operations such as removing paper misfeeds are performed.





1-34 bizhub PRO C5501





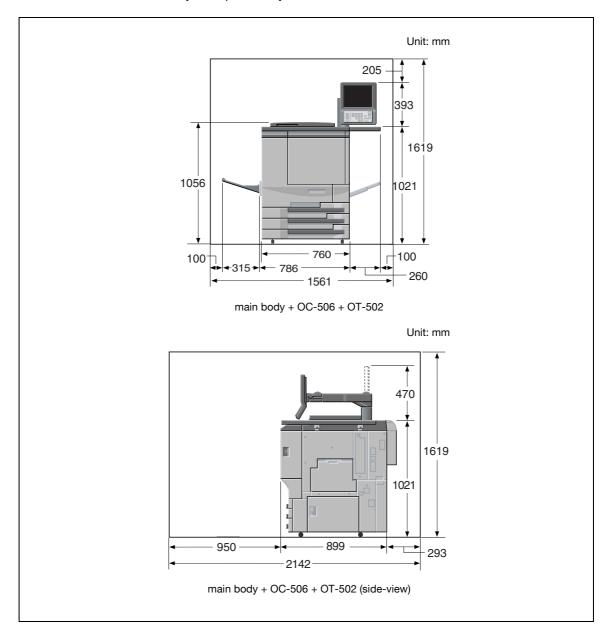
Reminder

Do not remove caution labels or notations. If any caution label or caution notation is soiled, please clean to make legible. If you cannot make them legible, or if the caution label or notation is damaged, please contact your service representative.

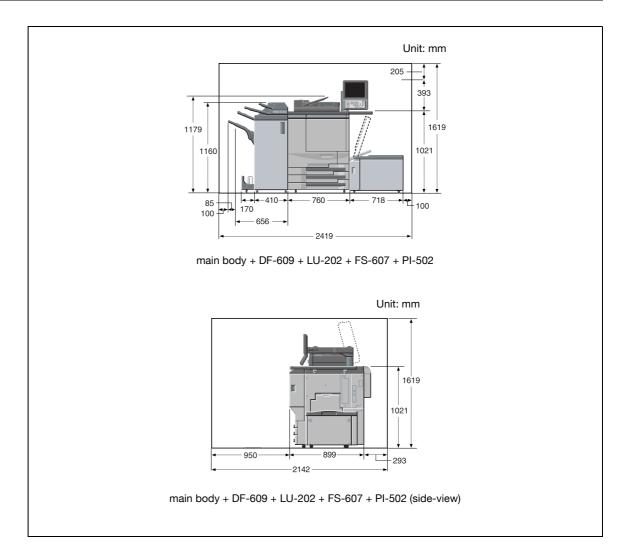
bizhub PRO C5501

1.10 Space requirements

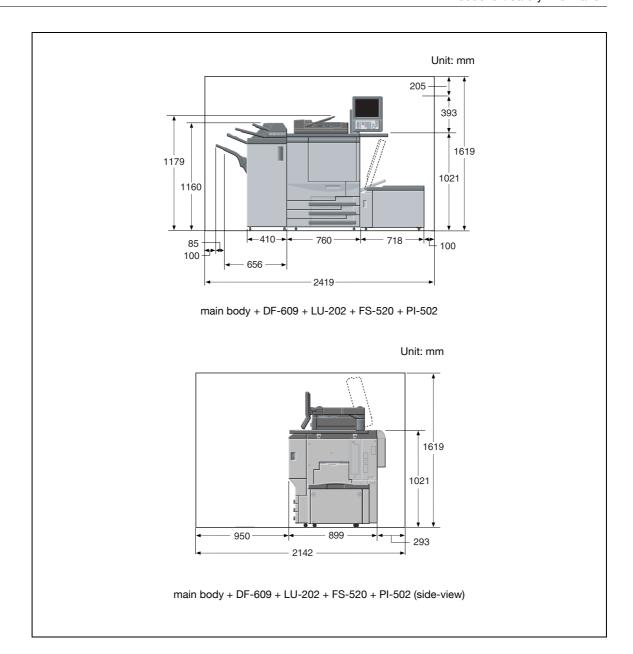
To ensure that machine operation, consumables replenishing, part replacement, and regular maintenance can easily be performed, adhere to the recommended space requirements detailed below. Combination size the main body and options may be different for the installation environment.



1-36 bizhub PRO C5501









Reminder

Be sure to allow a clearance of 200 mm or more at the back of this machine for the ventilation duct.

1-38 bizhub PRO C5501

1.11 Operation precautions

To ensure the optimum performance of this machine, observe the precautions described below.

Power source

The power source requirements are as follows.

Voltage: 230 V ACFrequency: 50 Hz

Use a power source with as little voltage or frequency fluctuations as possible.

Operating environment

The environmental requirements for correct operation of the machine are as follows.

Operating temperature: 10°C (50°F) to 30°C (86°F)

Humidity: 10% to 80%

Storage of copies

To store copies, follow the recommendation listed below.

- Copies that are to be kept for a long time should be stored where they are not exposed to light or high temperature in order to prevent them from fading or sticking together.
- Adhesive that contains solvent (e.g., spray glue) may dissolve the toner on copies.



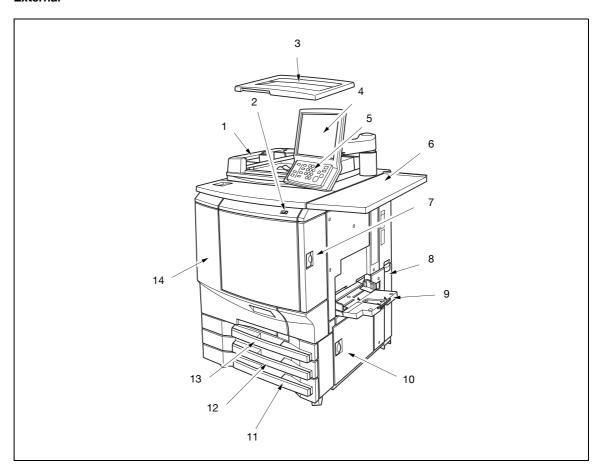
1-40 bizhub PRO C5501

Preparation for use

2 Preparation for use

2.1 Machine configuration

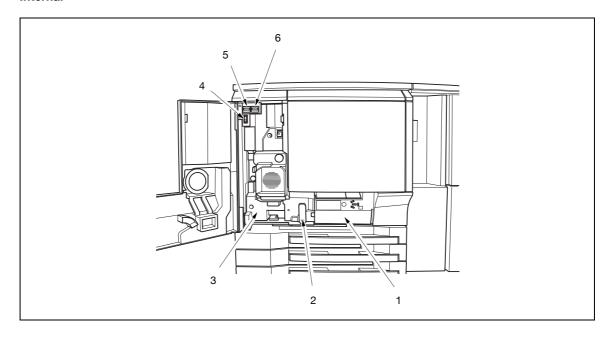
External



No.	Name	Description
1	ADF (Automatic document feeder) (option)	Automatically feeds multiple originals one at a time to the original glass for copying.
2	Sub power switch Turns on/off the copying and scanning functions. Turning it off with minate all the functions other than printing, and then enter the slip mode.	
3	Original cover (option)	Holds the original in position.
4	Touch panel	Displays interactive operation screens. See page 8-3 for details.
5	Control panel	Use to specify the various settings and perform operations such as starting copying. See page 8-3 for details.
6	Work table	Provides a convenient workspace for documents both before and after copying.
7	Toner access door	Opens to replenish the black toner and color toner.
8	Toner recovery box door	Opens to replace the filled toner recovery box with new one.
9	Multi-sheet bypass tray	Opens to use copy paper of the other size or type than those loaded in the main body trays. Up to 250 sheets (80 g/m²) can be set.
10	Right side door	Opens to allow removal of mishandled paper.
11	Tray 3	Holds 500 sheets of SRA3 ¬, SRA4 ¬/¬, A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, B5 ¬/¬, A5 ¬, 12" × 18" ¬, 11" × 17" ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬, plain paper (80 g/m²).

No.	Name	Description
12	Tray 2	Holds 500 sheets of SRA3 ¬, SRA4 ¬/¬, A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, B5 ¬/¬, A5 ¬, 12" × 18" ¬, 11" × 17" ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬, plain paper (80 g/m²).
13	Tray 1	Holds 500 sheets of SRA3 ¬, SRA4 ¬/¬, A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, B5 ¬/¬, A5 ¬, 12" × 18" ¬, 11" × 17" ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬, plain paper (80 g/m²).
14	Front door	Opens to allow removal of mishandled paper.

Internal



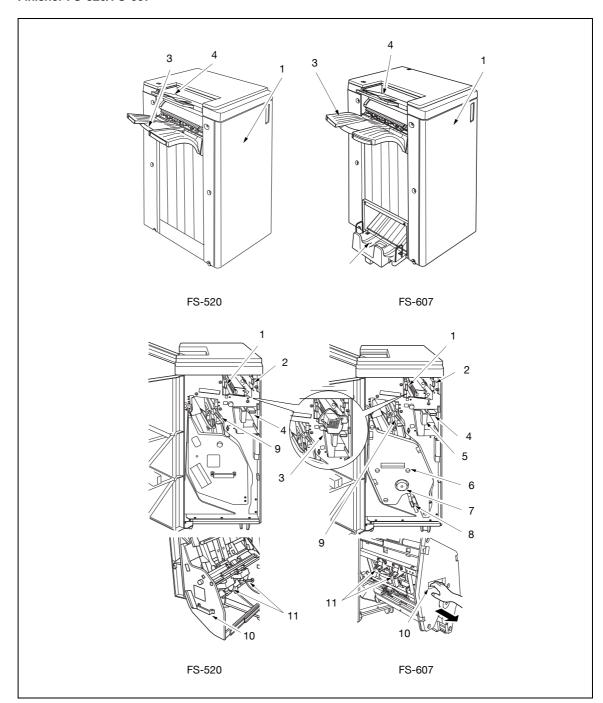
No.	Name	Description
1	Conveyance fixing unit	Withdrawn for removal of mishandled paper. For handling levers and knobs of this unit, follow the instruction on the screen to be displayed when paper misfeed occurs.
2	Conveyance fixing unit lever	Can be turned leftward to withdraw the conveyance fixing unit for removal of mishandled paper.
3	Fixing unit	Fuses the toner onto the copy paper.
4	Main power switch	Used only by service representative to turn machine power on/off.
5	Total counter	Indicates the total number of prints made.
6	Black print counter	Indicates the total number of black prints made

CAUTION

The internal fixing unit is very hot.
→ To avoid getting burned, DO NOT TOUCH.

2-4 bizhub PRO C5501

Finisher FS-520/FS-607



External View

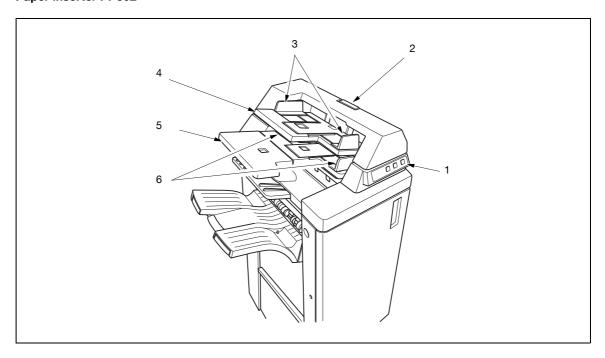
No.	Name	Description
1	Finisher door	Opens to the internal finisher to allow clearing mishandled paper, replenishing staples, and emptying waste basket of punch kit.
2	Folding mode tray	Holds sets output in Multi Half Fold mode, Fold & Staple mode, or Multi Tri-Fold mode.
3	Primary (Main) tray	Holds sets output in Non-sort mode, Collate mode (offset), or Staple mode.
4	Secondary (Sub) tray	Holds sets output in Non-sort mode.

Internal View

No.	p. Name Description		
1	Secondary (Sub) tray conveyance Opens rightward to remove mishandled paper. lever		
2	Paper inserter conveyance lever	Opens leftward to remove mishandled paper.	
3	Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 (option)	Punches file holes in the output copies.	
4	Entrance lever Opens downward to remove mishandled paper.		
5	Waste basket (option)	t (option) Holds waste paper punched out.	
6	Stacker unit Folds or folds & staples copies into booklet-styled sets, and also max. 3 copies in three.		
7	Knob	Can be turned to ease removal of mishandled paper.	
8	Lower lever	Opens leftward to remove mishandled paper.	
9	Stacker conveyance lever	Opens lower-leftward to remove mishandled paper.	
10	Stacker unit handle	Withdraws unit to allow removal of mishandled paper and replacement of staple cartridge.	
11	Staple cartridge	Holds staple case to be replaced when supplying staples.	

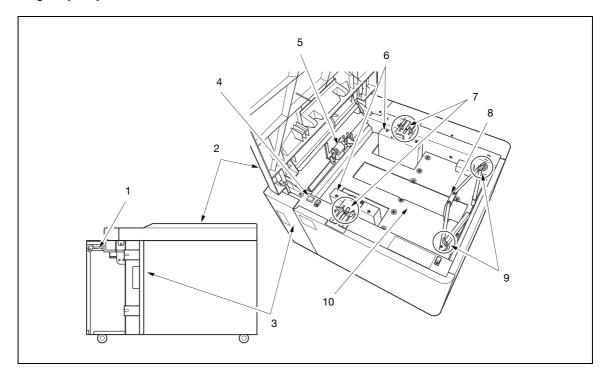
2-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Paper inserter PI-502



No.	Name	Description
1	Paper inserter control panel	Controls paper inserter operations.
2	Upper unit release lever	Can be moved to slide the upper unit of paper inserter for removal of mishandled paper.
3	Upper tray guide plates	Hold cover sheets to fix the position.
4	Upper tray	Holds cover sheets for use in cover sheet mode.
5	Lower tray	Holds cover sheets for use in cover sheet mode.
6	Lower tray guide plates	Hold cover sheets to fix the position.

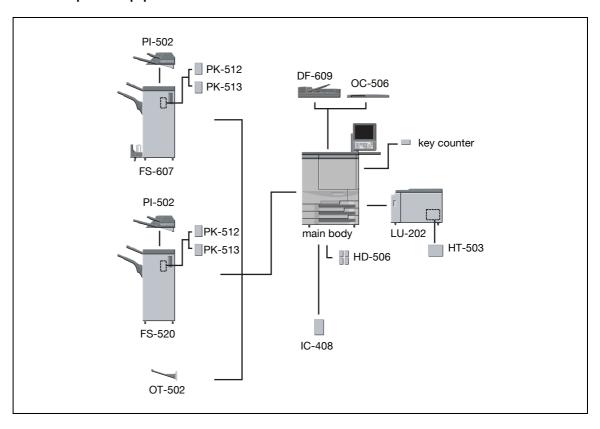
Large capacity unit LU-202



No.	Name	Description
1	Tray conveyance lever	Can be moved downward to ease removal of mishandled paper.
2	Tray top door Opens to allow paper loading or removal of mishandled paper.	
3	Tray left side door	Opens to allow removal of mishandled paper.
4	Paper loading button	Pressed to lower the bottom plate to allow loading paper.
5	Paper feed roller	Conveys copy paper to the main body.
6	Tray paper guides Hold copy paper to fix the position.	
7	Tray paper guide knobs	Can be turned to move or fix the tray paper guide.
8	Rear stopper	Fixes the rear end of copy paper.
9	Rear stopper knobs	Can be turned to move or fix the rear stopper.
10	Tray bottom plate	Goes up automatically when paper supply becomes low, and goes down when the paper loading button is pressed.

2-8 bizhub PRO C5501

Standard/optional equipment



Preparation for use

2.2 Turning on/off the power

This machine has two power switches: the main power switch and the sub power switch.



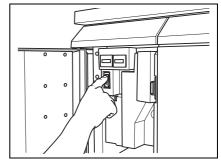
Reminder

Once the main power switch is turned on, be sure not to use it in usual operation.

To turn on the power

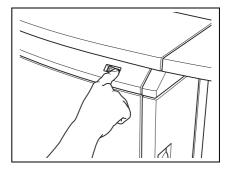
- 1 Turn on the main power switch.
 - The main power switch is located inside the machine.
 Open the front door and left side door to reach it.

When the main power switch is turned on, the Power LED on the control panel will light in red.

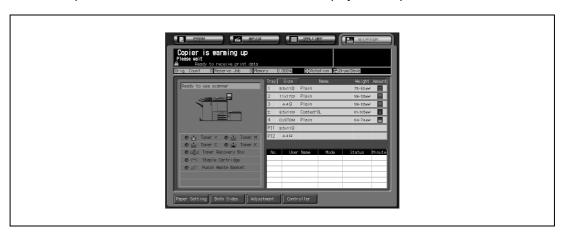


- 2 Turn on the sub power switch.
 - The sub power switch is located at the front of the main body.

When the sub power switch is turned on, the Power LED will turn green.



3 The Wake-up Screen and Machine Status Screen will be displayed in sequence.

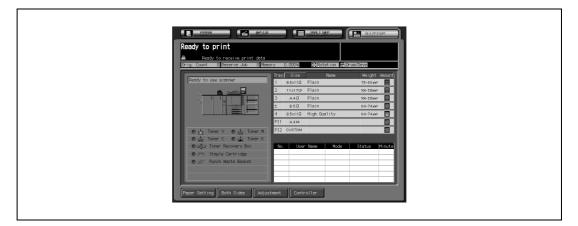


A few seconds after the Wake-up Screen appears on the touch panel, the Machine Status Screen will be displayed. It takes approximately 7 minutes for the machine to warm up.

- 2 Do you want to set reserve jobs while the machine is warming up?
- → Touch [COPY] tab to change the Machine Status Screen to the Copy Screen, then check that the message "Ready to set reserve job" is displayed in the message area.

2-10 bizhub PRO C5501

4 The message "Ready to print" is displayed in the message area of the Copy Screen.





Detail

The initial screen to be displayed after the machine power is turned on may have been changed. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

A user/section name and password may be required to operate the machine. See page 2-17 for details.

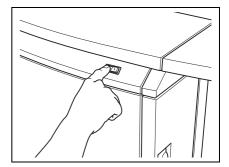
If a key counter or copy card is required, follow the instruction on the screen.

To turn off the power

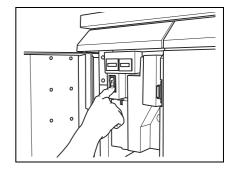
- ✓ Be sure not to turn off the main power switch in usual operation.
- When the machine is under control of the Weekly Timer function, do not turn off the sub power switch. Turning it off will deactivate the function.
- 1 Turn off the sub power switch.
 - The sub power switch is located at the front of the main body.

The touch panel and all the LEDs on the control panel will go out except for the Power LED.

The Power LED will turn red from green.



- 2 Turn off the main power switch.
 - The main power switch is located inside the machine.
 Open the front door and left side door to reach it.





Reminder

When turning the main power switch off then on, be sure to wait 10 seconds or longer before turning it on again; otherwise the machine may not operate properly.

2.3 Automatically returning to the default settings: Auto reset

Pressing [Reset] on the control panel or a certain period of machine inactivity clears all the copy settings specified so far and restores the machine to the default settings.

This function is called Auto Reset.

As the factory default, Auto Reset is set to function after 1 minute of machine inactivity. The timespan for the auto reset operation can be specified in the Utility mode.

This machine provides two types of default settings; Full-auto and Initial. This selection can be made also in the Utility mode. Full-auto is initially selected.



Detail

For selecting the timespan for the auto reset operation, see User's Guide – POD Administrator's reference.

For selecting Full-auto or Initial as the default settings, see User's Guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Copy settings specified as Full-auto

These settings cannot be altered except the Output Application setting.

Original Setting: Normal

Color: Full colorZoom: 1.000Application: None

Quality Adjustment: Standard

Output Application: Selection available in the Utility mode

Simplex/Duplex: 1->1Paper Setting: Auto



Detai

To change the selection of Output Application for Full-auto, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

2-12 bizhub PRO C5501

2.4 To use machine when power save LED lights

If you find the Power Save LED lit on the control panel, the machine cannot be operated due to the Power Save or Weekly Timer function.



To activate the machine

- → Press any key on the control panel.
 - If the machine makes no response, press [Power Save].

If Power Save has been activated, the machine will become available for operations.

If Weekly Timer has been activated, the Machine Status Screen will appear with the message "Timer interrupt mode/ Enter password" displayed in the message area, and the machine operation will be available temporarily by the Timer Interrupt function. See page 2-16 for details.





Detail

The Power Save function has two modes: Auto Low Power and Auto Shut-Off. See the following description for details.

This function can also be activated manually. For details, see page 2-15.

Automatically conserving energy (Auto low power)

This function conserves energy by lowering the power consumption to the following extent in standby mode.

Auto Low Power activates automatically after a specified period of copier inactivity with the Power Save LED lit, touch panel gone off, and all other LEDs except Start LED on the control panel turned off. The Start LED will turn red, while the Power LED keeps green. This function is set to OFF (not used) as factory default.



173.7 W

Note

If the Auto Shut-Off function activates at the same time, the power will be turned off.

The touch panel will not go off during a duplex copying job or when the Jam Position Screen is displayed.



. Detail

The Auto Low Power function can be set to OFF/5 minutes/10 minutes/15 minutes/30 minutes/60 minutes/90 minutes/120 minutes/240 minutes. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

To exit auto low power

Press or touch any key on the control panel and touch panel.

Automatically conserving energy (Auto shut-off)

This function achieves further energy conservation by reducing power consumption to the following extent in standby mode.

8.2 W

Auto Shut-Off follows Auto Low Power after a specified period (initially 1 minute) of copier inactivity, with the Power Save LED lit and all other LEDs on the control panel and touch panel turned off. The Power LED keeps green.





Detail

The Auto shut-off can be set for 1 minute/ 30 minutes/ 60 minutes/ 90 minutes/ 120 minutes/ 240 minutes, or can be deactivated. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

To exit auto shut-off

→ Press [Power Save]. The copying operation will become available.



2-14 bizhub PRO C5501

Preparation for use

Manually conserving energy

Follow the procedure below to operate Power Save function (Low Power or Shut-Off) manually.

1 Press [Power Save] for one second or longer, then release it.
The following message will be displayed.

Using Auto Shut-Off:

Auto Shut Off Mode/Press any key or touch screen to exit

Using Auto Low Power:

Low Power Mode/Press any key or touch screen to exit

Power Save will be activated.

The Power Save LED will be lit and the LCD screen will be turned off.



Reminder

Be sure to press [Power Save] for one second or longer, otherwise the following message will be displayed and the Shut-Off (Low Power) mode will not be activated.

Press POWER SAVER more than one second, then release it for Shut off mode

Keep POWER SAVER pressed more than one second to enter Low power mode



Detail

The machine is initially set to activate the Shut-Off function manually.

To use Low Power instead, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Limiting machine usage (Weekly timer)

The Weekly Timer function turns a copier on and off at the time specified by the administrator.

When a machine is in OFF condition under control of Weekly Timer, the Power Save LED is lit and machine operation is unavailable.



Detail

For details of the Weekly Timer function, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.



To use the machine temporarily

The following procedure temporarily enables the machine operation. (Timer Interrupt)

- The Timer Interrupt password is to be specified in the administrator setting. Ask your administrator for the password.
- ✓ You cannot specify the copy time shorter than 5 minutes; entering 0 for hour and a number smaller than 5 for minute will set the minute at 5.
 - Also, a number larger than 60 is unavailable for minute.
- 1 Press [Power Save] on the control panel.

The Machine Status Screen will be displayed along with the message shown below.

Timer interrupt mode Enter password \$###

The machine power will be turned off automatically after 5 minutes from this state if a password is not entered.

Or, if the following message is displayed, proceed to step 3.



Input desired copy time \$ hour(s) \$# minute(s)

- 2 Enter the Timer Interrupt password, then press [Start] on the control panel.
 - Enter a 4-digit Timer Interrupt password using the control panel keypad, then press [Start].
 - Do you want to correct an invalid password?
 - → Continue by entering the valid 4-digit password.
- 3 Set the hour for the interrupt use, then press [Start] on the control panel.
 - Enter a 1-digit hour (ex. 3 for 3 hours) using the control panel keypad (0 ~ 9), then press [Start].

Input desired copy time 3 hour(s) \$# minute(s)

- 4 Set the minute for the interrupt use, then press [Start] on the control panel.
 - Enter a 2-digit minute (ex. 07 for 7 minutes) using the control panel keypad (00 ~ 59), then press [Start].

Input desired copy time 3 hour(s) 07 minute(s)

Copying is available until the set time is up.

When the machine operation is finished, press [Power Save] on the control panel for one second or longer, then release it.

The machine returns to OFF condition.

2-16 bizhub PRO C5501

2.5 Making user authentication

This machine can prohibit its operation until the user name, user password, section name, and/or section password specified by the administrator are verified. Copy quantity limit for each section can also be set.

When the machine is turned on, one of the following User Authentication screen will be displayed according to the authentication setting.



Copying will be available by the following procedure.

Preparation for use

To enter user name and password

- 1 Enter the user name, user password, section name, and/or section password, as required.
 - Touch the desired item key to display the keypad screen.
 Enter your user name (max. 64 characters), user password (max. 64 characters), section name (max. 8 characters) and/or 8-digit section password.
- 2 Touch [OK].

Check that the screen message changes to "Ready for copy."

3 Start machine operation.

Normal copying/printing/scanning job is available on the machine.

4 When machine operation is completed, press [Access].

The initial state will be restored, with the User Authentication Screen displayed on the touch panel.



Note

If the message "Copy limit reached" is displayed and machine operation becomes unavailable, contact your administrator.

2-18 bizhub PRO C5501

Paper and original information

3 Paper and original information

3.1 Paper information

This machine is equipped with the following trays for loading copy paper.

- Tray 1, 2 and 3 (Main body trays)
- Bypass Tray
- Tray 4 (Large Capacity Unit LU-202)
- Paper Inserter PI-502 (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)

Also, the following equipment is provided for conveying/delivering copies.

- ADU (Automatic Duplex Unit) (built in to the main body)
- Finisher FS-520/FS-607
- Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)
- Output tray OT-502 (for the machine without finisher)

Refer to the following information on paper capacity for each.

Paper weight

Paper trays	Paper Weight
Tray 1, 2 and 3 (Main body trays)	A4, 8.5" \times 11" or larger: 64 to 256 g/m ² Smaller than A4, 8.5" \times 11": 64 to 209 g/m ² Cover paper for perfect binding: 82 to 162g/m ²
Bypass Tray	64 to 300 g/m ² Cover paper for perfect binding: 82 to 162g/m ²
Tray 4 (Large Capacity Unit LU-202)	64 to 300 g/m ²
Paper Inserter PI-502 Upper/Lower tray (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)	50 to 200 g/m ² Cover paper for perfect binding: 82 to 162g/m ²

Equipment		Paper Weight
Automatic Duple	ex Unit	64 to 256 g/m ²
Finisher Secondary FS-520 (sub) tray		50 to 300 g/m ²
	Primary (main) tray	60 to 300 g/m ² Staple: 60 to 209 g/m ²
Finisher FS-607	Secondary (sub) tray	50 to 300 g/m ²
	Primary (main) tray	60 to 300 g/m ² Staple: 60 to 105 g/m ² Can be saddle-stitched with up to two cover sheets (200 g/m ²) attached.
	Folding mode tray	Fold & Staple: 60 to 105 g/m ² Can be stapled with a cover sheet (200 g/m ²) attached. Multi Half Fold: 60 to 105 g/m ² Multi Half Fold of 3 sheets: 60 to 80 g/m ² Multi Half Fold of 1 sheet: 81 to 105 g/m ²
Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)		60 to 128g/m ²
Output tray OT-502		64 to 300 g/m ²



Reminder

Be sure to use paper only of the weight specified for the tray; otherwise copy quality may be deteriorated or machine trouble may occur.



Detail

Paper weight is to be specified for each paper tray in the paper setting. See page 9-33 for details.

The paper weight specified for each tray can be registered and deleted in the User Setting. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.



Note

Although the Finisher FS-520/FS-607 can actually handle paper of the weight less than 64 g/m² as described above, the paper fed from trays 1 to 4 and bypass tray will be 64 g/m² at minimum.

3-4 bizhub PRO C5501

Paper tray/exit tray capacity

Paper trays	Capacity
Tray 1, 2 and 3 (Main body trays)	500 sheets (80 g/m²)
Bypass Tray	250 sheets (80 g/m²)
Tray 4 (Large Capacity Unit LU-202)	3,000 sheets (80 g/m²)
Paper Inserter PI-502 Upper/Lower tray (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)	200 sheets (50 to 200g/m²)

Equipment		Capacity
Automatic Duplex Unit		Unlimited
Finisher FS-520	Secondary (sub) tray	Max. 100 sheets
	Primary (main) tray (normal)	500 sheets (80 g/m²) (A5 □/□, B6 □, 5.5"×8.5" □/□) 3,000 sheets (80 g/m²) (A4 □/□, B5 □/□, 16K □/□, 8.5"×11" □/□, 7.25"×10.5" □/□) 1,500 sheets (80 g/m²) (SRA3□, SRA4□, A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, 8K □, 12"×18" □, 11"×17" □, 8.5"×14" □) Tray capacity varies depending on paper weight. -80 g/m²: 1,500 sheets 81-135 g/m²: 1,000 sheets 136-209 g/m²: 700 sheets 210-300 g/m²: 500 sheets
	Primary (main) tray (Staple)	Max. 50 sheets (80 g/m²) per set 2-9 sheets stapled: 100 sets (150-417mm in length)/ 50 sets (others) 10-20 sheets stapled: 50 sets 21-30 sheets stapled: 30 sets 31-40 sheets stapled: 25 sets 41-50 sheets stapled: 20 sets
Finisher FS-607	Secondary (sub) tray	Max. 100 sheets
	Primary (main) tray (normal)	500 sheets (80 g/m²) (A5 □/ロ, B6 □, 5.5"×8.5" □/□) 2,500 sheets (80 g/m²) (A4 □/□, B5 □/□, 16K □/□, 8.5"×11" □/□, 7.25"×10.5" □/□) 1,500 sheets (80 g/m²) (A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, 8K □/□, 12"×18" □, 11" × 17" □, 8.5"×14" □)
	Primary (main) tray (Staple)	Max. 50 sheets (60 to 80 g/m²) per set Max. 20 sheets (106 to 209 g/m²) per set 2-9 sheets stapled: 150 sets 10-20 sheets stapled: 50 sets 21-30 sheets stapled: 30 sets 31-40 sheets stapled: 25 sets 41-50 sheets stapled: 20 sets
	Folding mode tray	Max. folded & stapled sheets: 20 sheets (80 g/m²) / 16 sheets (81 to 105 g/m² colored or coated paper) Half Fold: 33 sets for 3-sheet-folded booklet (99 sheets, 396 pages) (25 sets for A4 □, 8.5" × 11" □) Fold & Staple: 20 sets for 5-sheet-folded booklet (100 sheets, 400 pages) (15 sets for A4 □, 8.5" × 11" □) Fold & Staple: 5 sets for 20-sheet-folded booklet (100 sheets, 400 pages) Max. folded sheets in Multi Tri-Fold: 3 sheets (60 to 80 g/m²) / 1 sheet (81 to 105 g/m²) Multi Tri-Fold: 50 sets for 1-sheet-folded set
Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)		Unlimited
Output tray OT-502		150 sheets

Finisher FS-520 information:

Paper weight	Paper type				
	Normal paper	High quality paper	Colored paper	Coated paper	
64 to 80 g/m ²	50 sheets	50 sheets	50 sheets	40 sheets	
81 to 105 g/m ²	40 sheets	30 sheets	30 sheets	25 sheets	
106 to 135 g/m ²	30 sheets	30 sheets	25 sheets	20 sheets	
136 to 209 g/m ²	20 sheets	20 sheets	15 sheets		

Up to 2 cover sheets (200 g/m² max.) can be inserted from paper inserter. In this case, the stapling capacity mentioned above includes the number of attached cover sheet.

Paper size

Paper Trays		Available Size
Tray 1, 2 and 3 (Main body trays)		Standard Size: SRA3 , SRA4 , A3 , B4 , A4 , A4 , B5 , B5 , 12" × 18" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 11" , 8.5" × 11" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 14" , 8.5" × 11" , 11
Bypass Tray		Standard Size: SRA3 ¬, SRA4 ¬/¬, A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, B5 ¬/¬, A5 ¬, 12"×18" ¬, 11"×17" ¬, 8.5"×14" ¬, 8.5"×11" ¬ Custom Size: Max. 330 mm×487 mm to Min. 100 mm × 148 mm Tab Paper: A4 ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬
Tray 4 (Large Capacity Unit LU-202)		Standard Size: SRA3 , SRA4 , A3 , B4 , A4 , A4 , B5 , 13" × 19" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 11" Custom Size: Max. 330 mm × 487 mm to Min. 210 mm × 182 mm Tab Paper: A4 , 8.5" × 11"
Paper Inserter PI-502 (option for Finisher FS-520/ FS-607)	Upper Tray	Standard Size: A4 □/□, B5 □/□, 8.5" × 11" □/□, 5.5" × 8.5" □ Custom Size: Max. 216 mm × 297 mm to Min. 182 mm × 148 mm
	Lower Tray	Standard Size: SRA4 , A3 , B4 , A4 , A4 , B5 , A5 Custom Size: Max. 314 mm × 458 mm to Min. 182 mm × 148 mm

3-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Equipment		Available Size
Automatic Duplex Unit		Max. 330 mm × 487 mm to min. 100 mm × 140 mm Tab paper: Unavailable
Finisher FS-520	Secondary (sub) tray	Standard Size: SRA3 □, SRA4 □/□, A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □/□, B6 □, A6 □, 8K □, 16K □/□, 13"×19" □, 12"×18" □, 11"×17" □, 8.5" × 14" □, 8.5"×11" □/□, 5.5"×8.5"□/□ Custom Size: Max. 330 mm×487 mm to Min. 100 mm × 148 mm Tab Paper: A4 □, 8.5" × 11" □
	Primary (main) tray (normal)	Standard Size: SRA3 = 1, SRA4 =, A3 =, B4 =, Foolscap, A4 = / -, B5 = / -, A5 = 1 / -, B6 = 1, 8K =, 16K = / -, 12" × 18" =, 11" × 17" =, 8.5" × 14" =, 8.5" × 11" = / -, 5.5" × 8.5" = 1 / - 1: 5.5" × 8.5" =, SRA3 =, A5 = and B6 = are available for straight output only. Custom Size 2: Max. 314 mm × 458 mm to Min. 182 mm × 148 mm 2: Max. 314 mm × 458 mm to Min. 128 mm × 148 mm for straight output only. Tab Paper: A4 -, 8.5" × 11" -
	Primary (main) tray (Staple)	Standard Size: SRA4 □, A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □, 8K □, 16K □/□, 12" × 18" □, 11" × 17" □, 8.5" × 14" □, 8.5" × 11" □/□, 5.5" × 8.5" □ Custom Size: Max. 314 mm × 458 mm to Min. 182 mm × 148 mm Tab Paper: A4 □, 8.5" × 11" □
Finisher FS-607	Secondary (sub) tray	Standard Size: SRA3 , SRA4 , A3 , B4 , Foolscap, A4 , B5 , B5 , A5 , B6 , A6 , 8K , 16K , 16K , 12" × 19" , 12" × 18" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 14" , 8.5" × 11" , 5.5" × 8.5" , 10" , 100 mm × 148 mm Tab Paper: A4 , 8.5" × 11"
	Primary (main) tray (normal)	Standard Size: SRA4 □, A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □*1/□, B6 □*1, 8K □, 16K □/□, 12"×18" □, 11"×17" □, 8.5"×14" □, 8.5"×11" □/□, 5.5"×8.5" ¹1/□ *1: 5.5"×8.5" □, A5 □ and B6 □ are available for straight output only. Custom Size*2: Max. 314 mm×458 mm to Min. 182 mm×148 mm *2: Max. 314 mm×458 mm to Min. 128 mm×148 mm for straight output only. Tab Paper: A4 □, 8.5"×11" □
	Primary (main) tray (Staple)	Standard Size: SRA4 , A3 , B4 , Foolscap, A4 , B5 , B5 , A5 , 8K , 16K , 16K , 12" × 18" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 14" , 8.5" × 11" , 5.5" × 8.5" Custom Size: Max. 314 mm × 458 mm to Min. 182 mm × 148 mm Tab Paper: A4 , 8.5" × 11"
	Folding mode tray	Standard Size: SRA3 ; SRA4 ; A3 ; B4 ; A4 ; 12" × 18" ; 11" × 17" ; 8.5" × 14" ; 8.5" × 11" ; 8
Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 (option for Finisher FS-520/FS-607)		2 holes (PK-512): A3 □, B4 □, Foolscap, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □/□, 8K □, 16K □/□, 11"×17" □, 8.5"×14" □, 8.5"×11" □/□, 5.5"×8.5" □ 4 holes (PK-512): A3 □, B4 □, A4 □, B5 □, 8K □, 16K □, 11"×17" □, 8.5"×11" □ Swedish 4 holes (PK-513): A3 □, B4 □, A4 □, B5 □
Output tray OT-502		Max. 331 mm × 488 mm to Min. 100 mm × 148 mm



Detail

Use the Paper Setting function to specify the paper size to be loaded in tray 1 to 4 and bypass tray, selecting appropriate one from [Standard], [Custom], and [Tab Paper]. With [Standard] selected, the machine will automatically detect the paper size loaded in the tray. See page 9-33 for details.

Auto tray switch function

If the selected paper tray runs out of paper while a job is being printed and a different paper tray is loaded with paper meeting the following conditions, the other paper tray is automatically selected so printing can continue. If the optional Large Capacity Unit LU-202 is installed, a maximum of 4,500 copies can be made continuously. (The paper tray is automatically switched only if the "ATS Permission parameter" in the Utility mode is set to "Permit".)

Operating Conditions (Set the following condition at "01 System Setting\03 Feed Tray Setting" of User Setting.)

- Select the paper trays to be selected automatically by "02 Feed Tray Auto Selection", if Auto paper select is functioned.
 - Tray Priority is available.
- Select "On" at "03 ATS Permit Setting"
- Select the paper type setting of the tray which is automatically selected when ATS functions at "04 Auto Paper Type"

Load the following paper into the paper trays.

- The same size in the same orientation.
- The same paper type.

To store copy paper

Observe the following precautions when storing the paper.

- Store paper in a cool, dry area. Using damp paper may cause a paper misfeed.
- Keep partially used packages tightly wrapped during storage.
- Do not place paper packages vertically to store. Paper curl due to the vertical storage may cause a paper misfeed.

3-8 bizhub PRO C5501

3

3.2 Original information

When making copies, position the original into the ADF or on the original glass.

To copy original that cannot be positioned into the ADF, position them on the original glass.

Using original glass

Use the original glass when originals are not suitable for use with the document feeder, e.g. when size is incompatible, or when originals are folded, stapled, torn, or in generally poor condition.

Unsuitable ADF Originals

The following types of original should not be positioned into the ADF, otherwise paper misfeeds, damage to the original or the machine trouble may occur.

- Wrinkled, folded, curled, or torn original
- Highly translucent or transparent original, such as overhead transparencies or trace paper
- Coated original such as carbon-backed paper
- Original printed on paper thicker 210 g/m² (use the Thick original mode to copy original thicker 129 g/m²)
- Original printed on paper thinner than 35 g/m² (use the Thin original mode to copy original thinner 49 g/m²)
- Original printed on paper thicker than 50 g/m² during double-sided copying
- Original that are bound, for example, with staples or paper clips
- Original that are bound in a book or booklet
- Original that are bound together with glue
- Original pages that have been cut or contain cutouts
- Label sheets
- Offset printing masters
- Original with binder holes
- Original that have just been printed with this machine



Detail

Detectable paper size can be changed from AB series to Inch series, only A series, or AB series and Inch series mixed by the administrator. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

F4 (Foolscap) includes the following 4 types (8.25" \times 13" \square , 8.5" \times 13.5" \square , 8.5" \times 13" \square , and 8" \times 13" \square) and 8.5" \times 14" \square , one of which can be selected. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Machine administrator can specify the smallest original size to be detected from the original glass. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.



CAUTION

The original glass is fragile.

→ Do not place too heavy originals, or do not press strongly when thick original is placed and is under pressure of ADF, otherwise the glass may be broken and you may be injured.

ADF originals

Following three modes are provided when using the ADF to scan originals.

- Normal mode
- Mixed mode
- Z-Folded mode

Specifications for each mode are described as follows.



Detail

Detectable original size can be changed from AB series to Inch series, only A series, or AB series and Inch series mixed by the administrator. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Normal mode

Item	Description
Detectable original size	A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬, B5 ¬/¬, 11" × 17" ¬, 8.5" × 14" ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬/¬, 5.5" × 8.5" ¬/¬
Original weight	Single-sided original: 35 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Double-sided original: 50 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Use the Thick original mode to copy original thicker than 129 g/m ² Use the Thin original mode to copy original thinner than 50 g/m ²
Original size	128 mm × 139.7 mm to 297 mm × 431.8 mm
Feeder capacity	100 sheets (80 g/m²)
Curling tolerance	10 mm or less
Original placement	Face up

Mixed mode

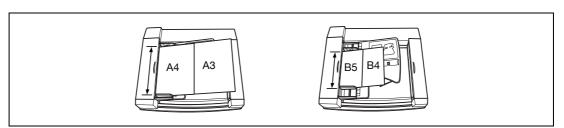
Use Mixed mode to copy mixed size originals. See page 9-9 for details.

Item	Description
Detectable original size	Two types of size combination are determined by the ADF guide width. A3 □, B4 □, A4 □/□, B5 □, and A5 □ mixed B4 □, A4 □, B5 □/□, and A5 □ mixed A4 □, B5 □, and A5 □ mixed
Original weight	Single-sided original: 35 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Double-sided original: 50 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Use the Thick original mode to copy original thicker than 129 g/m ² Use the Thin original mode to copy original thinner than 50 g/m ²
Feeder capacity	100 sheets (80 g/m²)
Curling tolerance	10 mm or less
Original placement	Face up (see page 8-12 for details.)



Note

See below for the guide width of each combination.



3-10 bizhub PRO C5501

Z-Folded Original mode

Use Z-Folded Original mode to scan folded originals without using the size detection sensor of the ADF. See page 9-10 for details.

Item	Description
Detectable original size	A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬, B5 ¬/¬, 11" × 17" ¬, 8.5" × 14" ¬, 8.5" × 11" ¬/¬, 5.5" × 8.5" ¬
Original weight	Single-sided original: 35 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Double-sided original: 50 g/m ² to 210 g/m ² Use the Thick original mode to copy original thicker than 129 g/m ² Use the Thin original mode to copy original thinner than 50 g/m ²
Original size	128 mm × 139.7 mm to 297 mm × 431.8 mm
Feeder capacity	100 sheets (80 g/m²)
Curling tolerance	10 mm or less
Original placement	Face up; orientation same as copy paper

3-12 bizhub PRO C5501

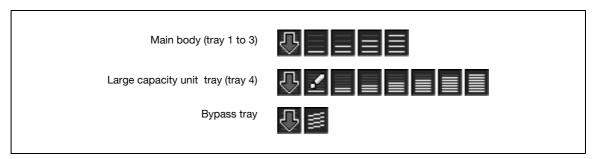
Supplies & handling

4

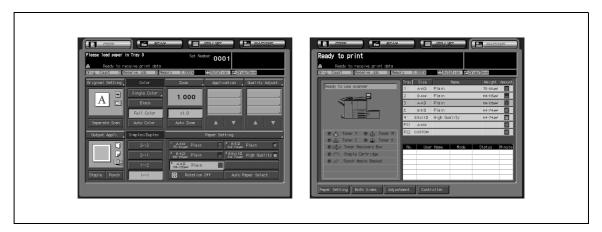
4 Supplies & handling

4.1 Loading paper

A paper indicator is shown on each tray key of the Machine Status Screen and of the Copy Screen to indicate the paper level of the tray. (Five levels are provided)



When paper in a tray becomes empty, the indicator blinks on the tray key.



Follow the procedure below to supply the empty tray with copy paper.



Reminder

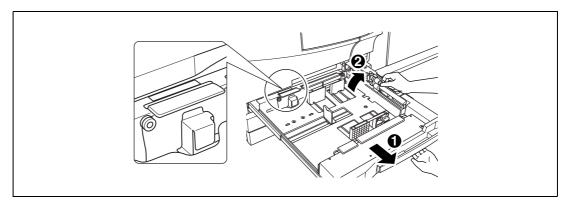
Paper setting for each tray can be made from the Machine Status Screen or from the Copy Screen using the [Paper Setting] key.

Be sure to load the specified paper; otherwise machine trouble may be caused.

Supplies & handling

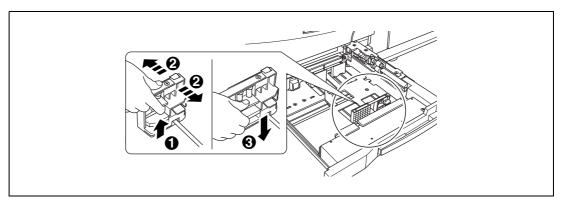
To load paper in main body trays (tray 1 to 3)

- ✓ If you want to use another paper than any loaded in the trays, temporarily change the setting of the tray to be used. See page 9-33 for details.
- 1 Withdraw the tray to be supplied with paper.
 - Withdraw the tray completely until the green line appears at the left side of the tray. Otherwise, the paper feed roller may not open or machine trouble may be caused.
- 2 Open the paper feed roller.



To load the same size as loaded before, proceed to step 4. If changing the paper size, proceed to the next step.

3 Adjust the position of the side guide plate.

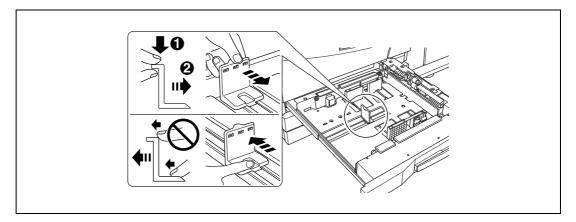


- Pull up the lock lever at the front, then slide the side guide plate to the desired position.
- See the size indication on the bottom plate of the tray to determine the position of the side guide plate.
- Push down the lock lever firmly until it clicks in position in order to fix the side guide plate.

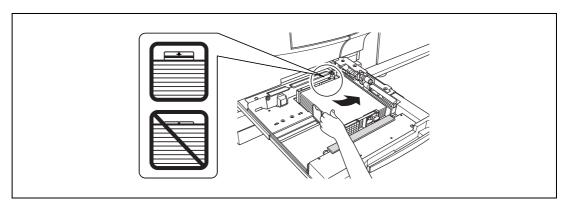
4-4 bizhub PRO C5501

4

4 Adjust the position of the rear stopper.



- To slide the rear stopper to the right, hold it at the upper part and slide it while pressing down slightly.
 - On the other hand, hold the rear stopper at the lower part to slide it to the left.
- 5 Place paper on the tray.



- Load paper aligning it to the right side of the tray, then align the rear stopper to the paper.
- Do not load more than 500 sheets (80 g/m²) or above the limit indicated on the side guide plate, otherwise paper misfeed may be caused.
- 6 When paper is seated properly, close the paper feed roller.
- 7 Gently push in the tray until it locks into place.



Reminder

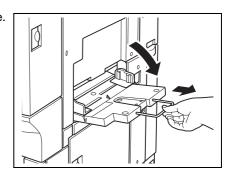
Be sure to fix the side guide plate in position according to the size indication on the tray bottom plate so that the machine can detect the correct paper size.

Be sure to press down the rear stopper when moving it to the right, and also be sure to hold at the lower part when moving it to the left. Do not move the stopper forcibly, otherwise it may be damaged.

Be sure that the rear guide plate is securely aligned to the paper; otherwise machine trouble may be caused.

To load paper in bypass tray

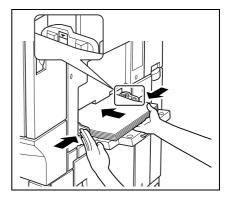
- When using the bypass tray, specify the paper type to be loaded on the tray at the same time. See page 9-33 for details.
- ✓ Do not use paper with staples or paper that conducts electricity (silver, carbon, etc.), otherwise an accident may occur as a result of fire.
- ✓ To avoid machine trouble, do not use coated paper as follows: Heat-sensitive paper, silver-coated or carbon-backed paper, OHP transparencies, ink-jet printer paper
- 1 Open the bypass tray located on the right side of the machine.



- 2 Load copy paper, and adjust the paper guides to the paper size.
 - Do not load more than 250 sheets (80 g/m²) or above the limit indicated on the paper guides, otherwise paper misfeed may be caused.

The indicator on the Machine Status Screen and Copy Screen will change to .

When copying is completed, close the bypass tray.

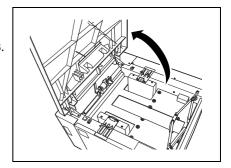


4-6 bizhub PRO C5501

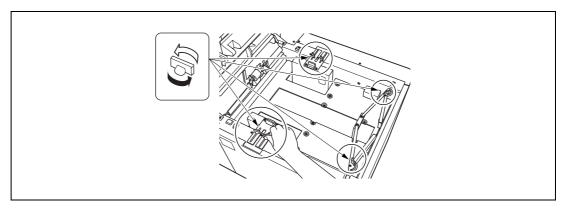
4

To load paper in large capacity tray (tray 4)

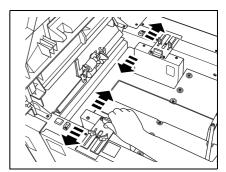
- Without the power turned on, the tray bottom plate will not function. Be sure to turn on the power switch before loading paper in the tray.
- ✓ If you want to use another paper than any loaded in the trays, temporarily change the setting of the tray to be used. See page 9-33 for details.
- 1 Open the tray top door.
 - The tray bottom plate will go up.
 - To load the same size as loaded before, proceed to step 3.
 If changing the paper size, proceed to the next step.



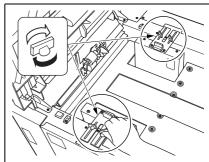
Adjust the position of the tray paper guides and rear stopper.



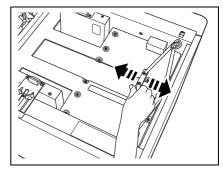
- Turn the four paper guide knobs and two rear stopper knobs counterclockwise to loosen them.
- Move the upper part of the two paper guides to the appropriate positions according to the size indication.



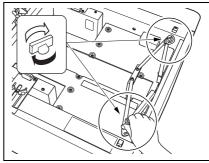
 Turn the tray paper guide knobs (two for each) clockwise to fix the guides.



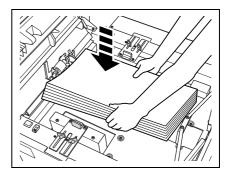
 Move the position of the rear stopper to the appropriate positions according to the size indication on the size indication on the bottom plate.



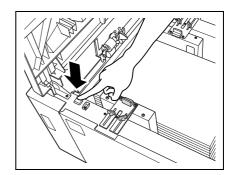
 Turn the two rear stopper knobs clockwise to fix the rear stopper.



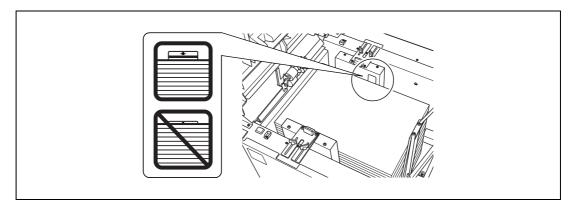
3 Load paper into the tray.



4 Press the paper loading button.



5 Repeat the steps 3 and 4 until the bottom plate will not go down any more.



6 Close the tray top door.

4-8 bizhub PRO C5501





Reminder

Do not load above the limit indicated on the tray paper guides.

Be sure that the rear stopper is correctly positioned according to the paper size to be loaded; otherwise paper misfeed or machine trouble may occur.

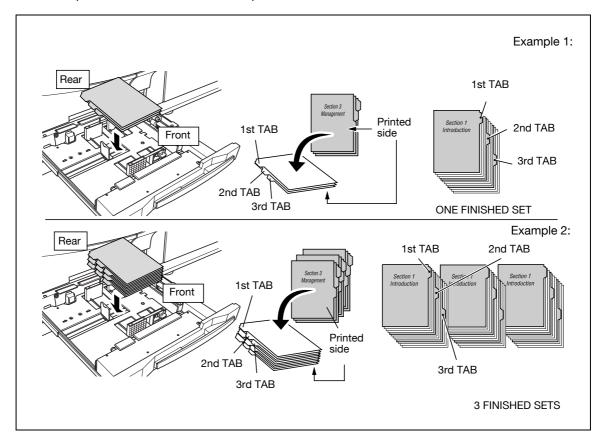
Supplies & handling

4.2 Loading tabbed sheets

Tabbed sheets can be used if the tray paper type is specified as tabbed sheets in the Paper Setting. Follow the procedure below to supply the tray with tabbed sheets.

To load tabbed sheets in main body trays (tray 1 to 3)

- ✓ The tray paper type should be specified as tabbed sheets. See page 9-33 for the details of Paper Setting.
- ✓ Example 1: 3 tabbed sheets loaded in position for one finished set
- ✓ Example 2: 9 tabbed sheets loaded in position for 3 finished sets



- 1 Withdraw the tray to be loaded with tabbed sheets.
- 2 Open the paper feed roller.
- 3 Place tabbed sheets on the tray.
 - Place paper referring to the illustration shown above.
- 4 Move the side guide plates to the edge of the paper.
 - Set paper aligning it to the paper feed roller side of the tray.
 - Press the release lever of the front side guide plate to move the side guide plates, and also move the rear edge guide to the edge of the paper.
- 5 Push in the tray until it locks into place.



Reminder

Do not load above the limit level on the side guide plate.

Be sure that the side guide plates and rear edge guide are securely aligned to the paper; otherwise the machine cannot detect the correct paper size, or machine trouble may occur.

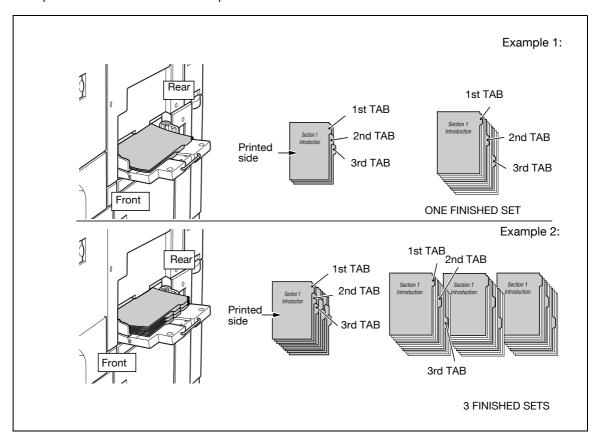
4-10 bizhub PRO C5501

4

To load tabbed sheets in bypass tray

Example 1: 3 tabbed sheets loaded in position for one finished set

Example 2: 9 tabbed sheets loaded in position for 3 finished sets

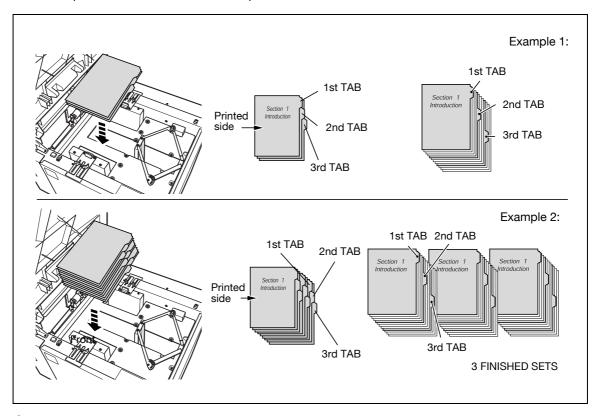


- 1 Open the bypass tray located on the right side of the machine.
- 2 Specify the paper type as tabbed sheets for the bypass tray.
 - See page 9-33 for specifying the paper type of the bypass tray.
- 3 Place tabbed sheets on the tray.
 - Place paper referring to the illustration shown above.

Supplies & handling

To load tabbed sheets in large capacity tray (tray 4)

- ✓ The tray paper type should be specified as tabbed sheets. See page 9-33 for the details of Paper Setting.
- ✓ Example 1: 3 tabbed sheets loaded in position for one finished set
- ✓ Example 2: 9 tabbed sheets loaded in position for 3 finished sets



- 1 Specify the paper type of tray 4 as tabbed sheets.
- 2 Open the tray top door.
- 3 Press the paper loading button to lower the tray bottom plate.
- 4 Move the tray paper guides and rear stopper to the edge of the paper.
 - Set paper aligning it to the paper feed roller side of the tray.
 - Move the side guide plates, and also move the rear stopper to the edge of the paper. Refer to page 4-7 for details.
- 5 Close the tray top door.

4-12 bizhub PRO C5501

4.3 **Adding toner**

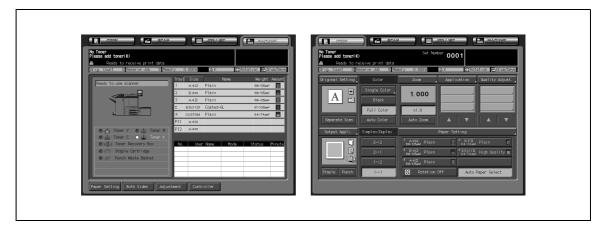
This machine is equipped with a toner storage to spare some toner so that the machine can keep printing for a while even if the toner in toner bottle is used up.

When toner supply from the toner bottle becomes low, the message "Ready to copy Please add toner" will be displayed on the touch panel.

When toner supply from the toner supply device also becomes low, the message will change to "No Toner Please add toner" will appear.

The toner color to be supplied can be checked on the Machine Status Screen.

Add toner by following the procedure below to exchange the toner bottle.





Reminder

Use the same number toner bottle as described on the label applied on the toner bottle cover. Otherwise, machine trouble may be caused.



⚠ WARNING

Precaution for the empty toner bottle

If it is thrown into a fire, the toner may ignite and cause a dangerous situation.

DO NOT THROW toner or the empty toner bottle into a fire!



CAUTION

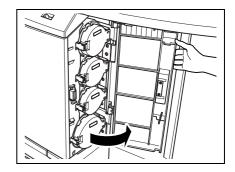
Precaution for storing and handling the toner bottle

If too much of toner is inhaled or toner gets in your eyes, your health may be affected.

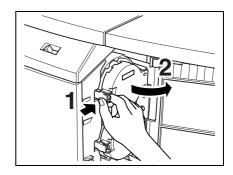
- **→** Keep the toner bottle away from children.
- **→** Be careful not to spill toner inside the machine or get toner on your clothes or hands.
- If your hands become soiled with toner, immediately wash them with soap and water.
- If toner gets in your eyes, immediately flush them with water, and then seek professional medical attention.

To exchange the toner bottle

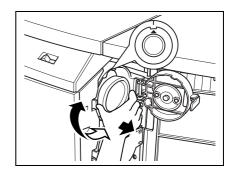
1 Open the toner access door.



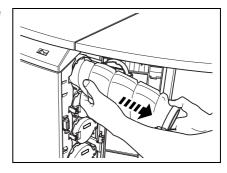
Unlock and open the toner bottle cover of the empty toner bottle.



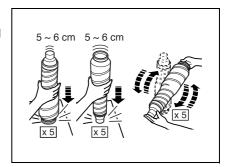
3 Partially withdraw the toner bottle, then turn it to set the uparrow mark (**A**) at the top.



4 Fully withdraw the toner bottle straightforward to remove the bottle.



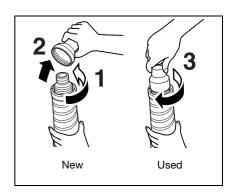
- 5 Loosen toner in the new toner bottle.
 - Tap both top and bottom of the new toner bottle on a solid surface five times each, then shake the bottle at least five times.



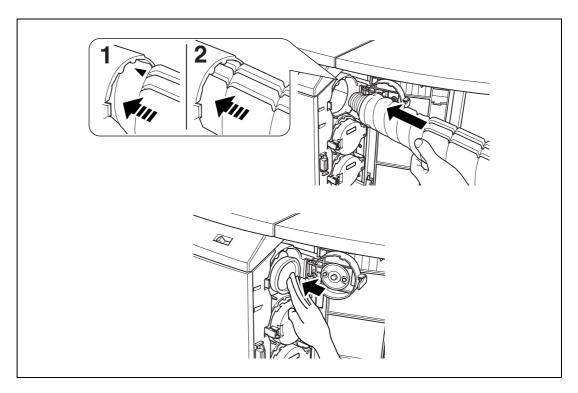
4-14 bizhub PRO C5501

4

6 Remove the cap from the new toner bottle, then put it to the used empty one.



- **7** Set the new toner bottle.
 - While positioning the up-arrow mark (▲) at the top and aligning the two hollow parts of the toner bottle with the salients on the bottle entrance, fully insert the new toner bottle until it locks in place.



8 Close and lock the toner bottle cover, then close the toner access door.



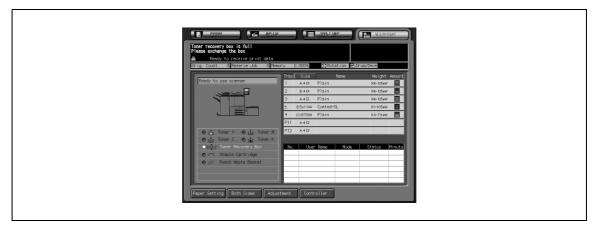


Reminder

The toner bottle cover cannot be locked if the toner bottle is not set in place. Be sure to fully insert it.

4.4 Exchanging toner recovery box

When the toner recovery box becomes full with the used toner, "Please exchange toner recovery box" message will be displayed on the touch screen, and also the Toner Recovery Box indicator on the Machine Status Screen will light.



Follow the procedure below to exchange the toner recovery box.



WARNING

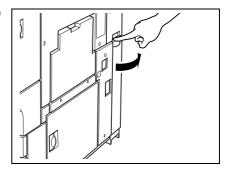
Precaution for the toner recovery box

If it is thrown into a fire, the toner may ignite and cause a dangerous situation.

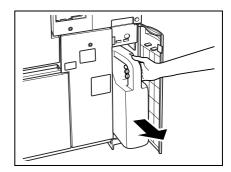
→ DO NOT THROW the toner recovery box into a fire!

To exchange toner recovery box

1 Open the toner recovery box door on the rear-right side of the machine.



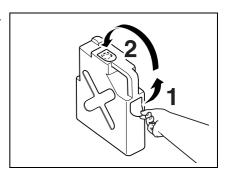
Withdraw the toner recovery box.



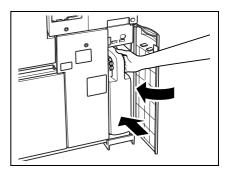
4-16 bizhub PRO C5501



- 3 Cover the used toner inlet of toner recovery box with a sticker.
 - Remove the sticker from the toner recovery box, then put it on the used toner inlet.



4 Set the new toner recovery box, then close the toner recover box door.





Reminder

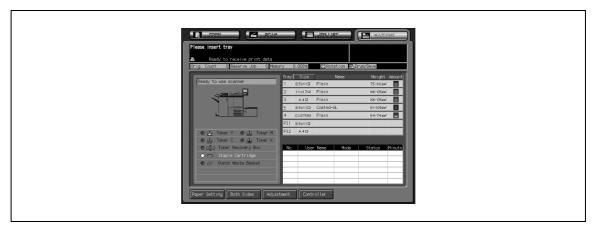
Be sure to completely cover the used toner inlet with the sticker, otherwise the used toner may leak out to soil the machine.

Supplies & handling

4.5 Replenishing staples

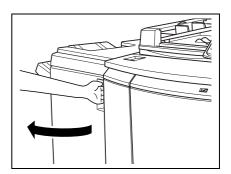
Inserting a new staple cartridge into Finisher FS-520

When the staple cartridge of the Finisher FS-520 becomes empty, the Staple Cartridge indicator lights in red in the option status area of the Machine Status Screen.

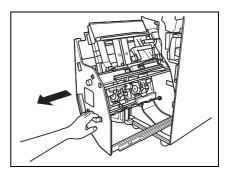


Follow the procedure below to replenish staples.

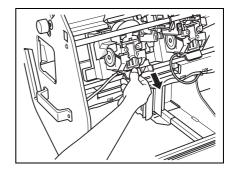
Open the Finisher door.



- 2 Pull out the stacker unit.
 - Pull out the stacker unit slowly by holding the stacker unit handle until it stops.

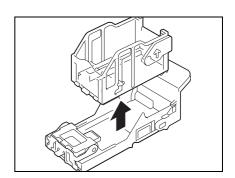


- 3 Remove the staple cartridge.
 - Hold the lever on the staple cartridge, and then pull the cartridge down to remove it.

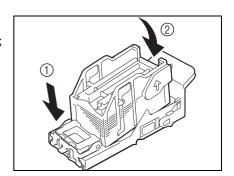


4-18 bizhub PRO C5501

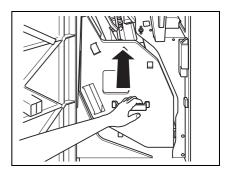
4 Remove the empty staple case from the staple cartridge.



- 5 Insert the new staple case into the staple cartridge.
 - Do not remove the staples remaining inside the cartridge; otherwise, the first sheet output after the replenishment will not be stapled.



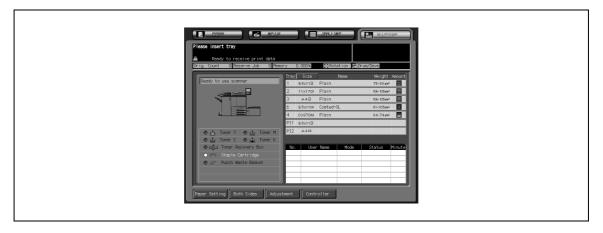
6 Return the stacker unit to its original position.



7 Close the Finisher door.

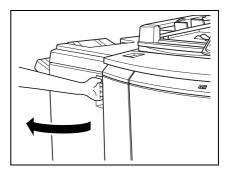
Inserting a new staple cartridge into Finisher FS-607

When the staple cartridge of the Finisher FS-607 becomes empty, the Staple Cartridge indicator lights in red in the option status area of the Machine Status Screen.

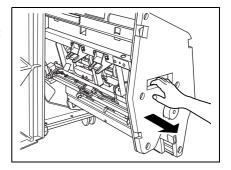


Follow the procedure below to replenish staples.

Open the Finisher door.

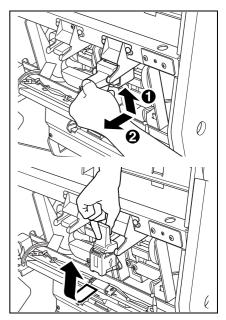


- 2 Pull out the stacker unit.
 - Pull out the stacker unit slowly by holding the stacker unit handle until it stops.

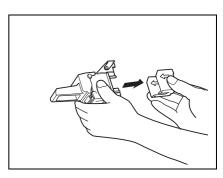


4-20 bizhub PRO C5501

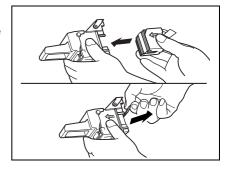
- 3 Remove the staple cartridge.
 - Pull up and draw forward the staple cartridge, then remove it while sliding it along the stapler rail.



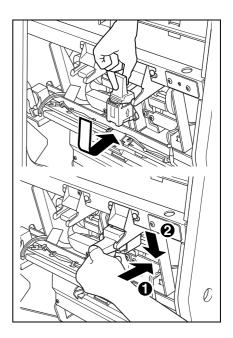
4 Remove the empty staple case from the staple cartridge.



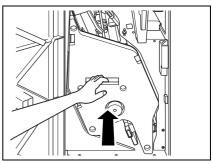
- 5 Insert the new staple case into the staple cartridge.
 - Firmly insert the staple case into the staple cartridge while aligning the arrow sides of both case and cartridge, then remove the lock tape.
 - Do not remove the staples remaining inside the cartridge; otherwise, the first sheet output after the replenishment will not be stapled.



- 6 Set the staple cartridge.
 - Insert the cartridge while sliding it along the stapler rail, then push down and in to secure it in place.



7 Return the stacker unit to its original position.



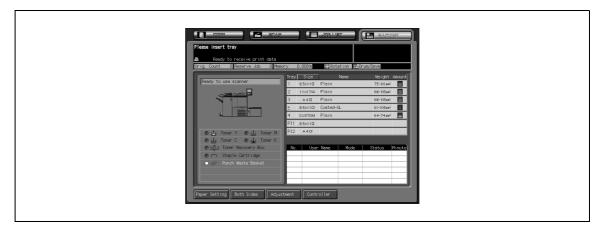
8 Close the Finisher door.

4-22 bizhub PRO C5501

4.6 Disposing punch waste

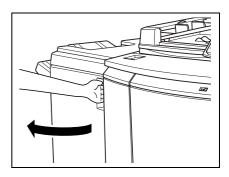
Emptying waste basket of Finisher FS-520/FS-607

When the waste basket of Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 installed in Finisher FS-520/FS-607 becomes full, the Punch Waste Basket indicator lights in red in the option status area of the Machine Status Screen.

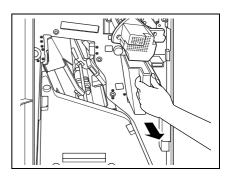


Follow the procedure below to empty the waste basket.

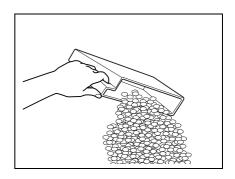
1 Open the Finisher door.



2 Withdraw the waste basket.



3 Empty the waste basket.



4 Return the waste basket to its original position, then close the Finisher door securely.



4-24 bizhub PRO C5501

5 Troubleshooting

5.1 If "Please Call Service C-####" message is displayed

A "Please Call Service C-####" message indicates a machine condition that requires the attention of your service representative.

The Call for Service Screen usually displays the telephone and facsimile numbers of your service representative.



Be sure to contact your service representative immediately by following the procedure below.

To contact service representative

- Make note of the report code number "C-####" indicated in the second line of the message area.
- Turn OFF the sub power switch and main power switch.
- 3 Unplug the machine.
- 4 Contact your service representative and report the condition and report code number.



Detail

The machine administrator can call for service using the Utility setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

In this case, you don't have to make a call for the report code, because your machine has been monitored automatically by your service representative.

After calling for service using the Utility setting, be sure to turn OFF the power immediately, then unplug the machine as described here.

Limited use of the copier in trouble

If the message shown below is displayed on the Call for Service Screen, you may continue operating the copier on a limited function basis and utilize the trays and ADU that are not affected by the trouble. To obtain this limited functionality of the copier, consult your service representative. Be sure to utilize the limited function only temporarily, and arrange for machine repair immediately.

If the limited use of the copier is available, the following message is displayed in the message area instead of the report code.

ex.

-- Tray 2 failure --

Press Reset to select except this tray

- Press [Reset] on the control panel.
 - Make note of the report code.

Please switch Off/On C-0202

3 Turn OFF then ON the sub power switch.

A copying job can continue without using the troubled portion of the machine (ex. Tray 2).

$\hat{\mathbb{N}}$

CAUTION

Precaution for limited use

The machine should not keep operating by limited use for long time.

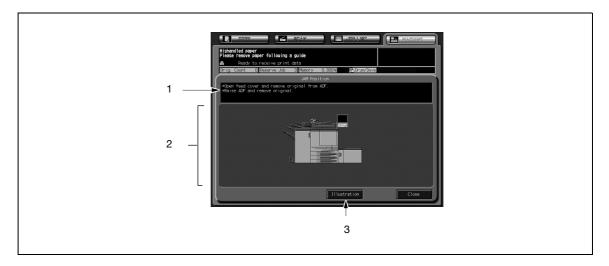
→ Be sure to contact your service representative immediately when the Call for Service Screen is displayed.

5-4 bizhub PRO C5501

5.2 Clearing mishandled paper

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine stops making copies and the Jam Position Screen displays to indicate misfeed area(s).

The [Start] LED turns red on the control panel, and copying operation cannot be continued until all the misfeed locations are cleared.



No.	Item	Description
1	Message area	An action will be displayed.
2	Paper jam position display	Number flashing or lighting indicate the jammed positions.
3	[Illustration] key	Touch to display the subsequent screens for the disposal action.

All the misfeed locations will be indicated by flashing/lighting numbers and arrows on this screen. Flashing number and arrow indicate the jammed position of the highest priority.

Action to remove mishandled paper is displayed in the message area, and touching Illustration will display subsequent screens for the disposal action.

Follow the procedure below to remove mishandled paper.



Detail

A jam code can be displayed in the message area of the Jam Position Screen. Contact your service representative, if desired.

Before performing the clearing procedure, see page 1-33 for the caution label locations inside the machine.

To remove mishandled paper

Touch [Illustration] on the screen.



The screen illustrating the method for the disposal action will be displayed.

- Follow the procedure on the screen to remove misfed paper.
 - Touch [Next] to go to the next page of a series of illustrations, if provided.
 - Touch [Jam Position] to return to the Jam Position Screen.
 - When removing mishandled paper, be sure to leave no torn paper inside the machine.
 - Do not touch or damage the drum surface.
- When completed, the Machine Status Screen will be restored.
 - If any misfeed location is left, the Jam Position Screen will be restored with the next disposal procedure in the message area and the location number in the jam position display. Repeat steps 1 to 2 until all the locations are cleared.



Precaution for high temperature

The internal fixing unit is very hot.

- To avoid getting burned, DO NOT TOUCH.
- Be especially careful not to put your hand into the fixing unit area when withdrawing the fixing conveyance unit to remove mishandled paper.



♠ CAUTION

Precaution for getting injured

Be careful of removing staples stuck inside the machine so as not to get injured.

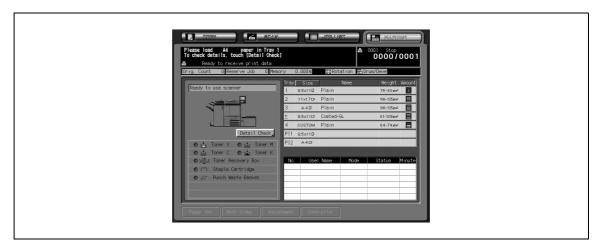
5-6 bizhub PRO C5501

5.3 If [MACHINE] tab blinks in orange

If any trouble occurs in the machine, one of the following messages will be displayed in the message area and the [MACHINE] tab will blink in orange.

- Paper Misfeed: "Mishandled paper"
- Tray Empty: "Please load ## paper"

With the above message, the [Detail Check] key will be displayed on the Machine Status Screen.



→ Touch [Detail Check], and follow the instruction on the screen.

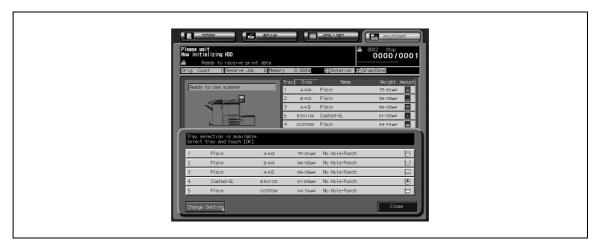
Paper misfeed

If a paper misfeed occurs with the print/scan job in progress while you are setting a reserve job, the machine stops operation and the [MACHINE] tab may blink in orange.

If the Jam Position Screen is displayed after touching [Detail Check], follow the procedure on page 5-5 to remove mishandled paper.

Tray empty

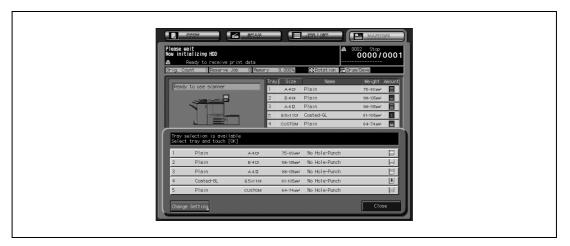
If the popup screen shown below is displayed after touching [Detail Check], the selected tray has become empty.



Follow the procedure below to change the tray selection for the current job, or supply the empty tray with copy paper.

To change the tray selection

Touch the desired tray key.



- 2 Touch [OK] to restore the Machine Status Screen.
- 3 Press [Start].Copy paper will be delivered from newly selected tray to continue the printing operation.

To supply the empty tray with paper

- 1 Load paper in the empty tray.
- 2 Touch [Close] to restore the Machine Status Screen.
- Press [Start].Printing operation will resume using the tray supplied with paper.



Detail

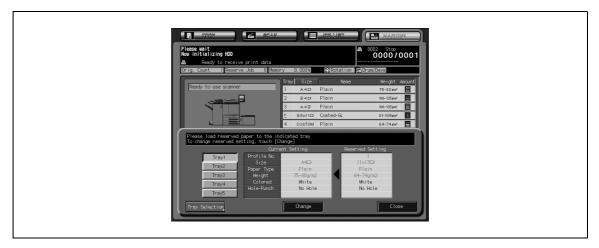
For details of loading paper, see page 4-3.

5-8 bizhub PRO C5501

Inconformity in paper setting

The machine automatically stops when copy paper in the selected tray should be replaced according to the paper setting specified in print data setting, and displays the following popup screen.

Follow the procedure for each to continue the machine operation.



- 1 Replace paper in the tray with that specified in the paper setting, then touch [Change].
- 2 Press [Start] to start the printing operation.

bizhub PRO C5501 5-9

Troubleshooting

5.4 If "Memory Full" message is displayed: Memory overflow

In certain modes, this machine uses memory to make operations convenient and smooth flowing.

Occasional memory overflow may occur if the installed memory is inadequate for the job conditions selected, and the machine will stop its operation with a popup menu displayed.

Take an appropriate measure described below to continue the operation.



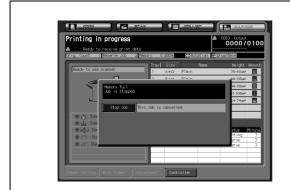
Note

Should memory overflow occur frequently, it is recommended that you contact your service representative to extend the memory capacity in your machine.

Memory overflow in current job

When memory overflow occurs while scanning the first job, the machine immediately stops and displays one of the following popup menus.

- When memory overflow occurs while scanning the first job, the machine immediately stops and displays one of the following popup menus.
 - To delete all the scanned data and discontinue the job, touch [Stop Job].
 - To give up further scanning but print out all the data already scanned into memory, touch [Stop Scan]. In this case, check the output sheets when printing is completed, and then reload the original to continue the job.





- 2 Press [Start] on the control panel.
 - The machine starts scanning for the reloaded original to complete the job.



Note

If the job settings include Booklet Pagination, the [Stop Scan] key will not appear.



Reminder

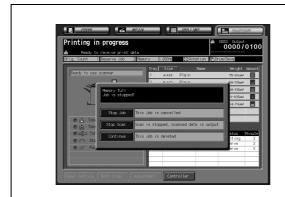
The original to be reloaded should be less in page count than the first loaded in order to prevent another memory overflow.

5-10 bizhub PRO C5501

Memory overflow in reserve job

When memory overflow occurs while scanning for the reserve job, the machine immediately stops and displays one of the following popup menus.

- Take either of the following actions.
 - To delete all the scanned data and discontinue the reserve job, touch [Stop Job].
 - To give up further scanning for the reserve job but print out all the data already scanned into memory, touch [Stop Scan].
 - To print out all the data already scanned for the reserve job, and continue scanning as the current job gradually enables memory for new data, touch [Continue].
 - When selecting [Stop Scan] or [Continue], check the output sheets and then reload the original to continue the job.





- 2 Press [Start] on the control panel.
 - The machine starts scanning for the reloaded original to complete the job.



Note

If the reserve job settings include Booklet Pagination, the [Stop Scan] key will not appear.

bizhub PRO C5501 5-11

5.5 If power off/on screen is displayed

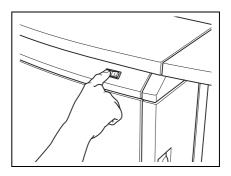
When any trouble affects the electrical signal of the copier, "Please turn power Off/On" will be displayed in the message area.



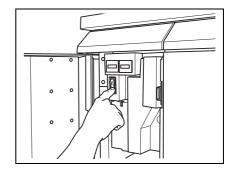
Follow the procedure below to turn the machine power off then on.

To turn machine power off/on

1 Turn OFF the sub power switch.



- 2 Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 3 Wait about 10 seconds.
- 4 Turn ON the main power switch and sub power switch.



5-12 bizhub PRO C5501

5.6 Troubleshooting tips

Symptom	Remedy	
COPIER DOES NOT OPERATE WHEN SUB POWER SWITCH IS ON	Check to be sure power plug is firmly inserted in electrical socket. Check to be sure main power switch is ON. Check to see if Weekly Timer function is activated. See page 2-15 for details. Check to see if User Authentication is required on the screen. See page 2-17 for details.	
COPY IMAGE IS TOO LIGHT	Manually adjust copy density to darker density. Check toner message and add toner, if required. Check paper for dampness. Do not leave paper in copier when humidity is high. Check to see if Photo, Text, or Map mode is required.	
COPY IMAGE IS TOO DARK	Manually adjust copy density to lighter density. Check to see if Photo, Text, or Map mode is required.	
COPY IMAGE IS NOT CLEAN OR SHOWS SPOTS	Use clean originals since dirt marks may be copied. Keep original glass and inner surface of document feeder clean. Call for service if "Please call service" is displayed in the message area. Check density indicator and lighten if required.	
COPY PAPER MISHANDLES DURING COPYING	Fan copy paper and load it with curl side in proper location. Do not exceed the tray capacity.	
MAGNIFICATION CANNOT BE CHANGED	Reduce & Shift is incompatible with magnification. Press [Reset] and set desired copying conditions without using Reduce & Shift.	
DUPLEX MODES CANNOT BE SELECTED	Fully close ADF, then select the desired duplex mode again.	
COPYING DOES NOT BEGIN AF- TER PRESSING [Start]	Close Front door of main body. Insert or adjust the appropriate paper tray for paper size selected. Be sure the print quantity is entered. Close Finisher door/Folding unit door/Large capacity stacker door completely.	
COPYING DOES NOT RESUME AFTER MISHANDLED PAPER IS REMOVED	Check copier diagram on touch panel for additional indications of mishandled paper.	
COPY QUALITY IS POOR	Check paper for dampness, and replace it if necessary. Contact your service representative.	
USING USER AUTHENTICATION, COPIES CANNOT BE MADE AF- TER PASSWORD IS ENTERED	Check to see if the message "Copy limit reached" is displayed. Contact the machine manager to reset limit.	
THE ORIGINAL PAPER IS MIS- HANDLED OR SKEWED IN THE DOCUMENT FEEDER	Originals should conform to the recommended size and weight. Be sure originals are not stapled. Align originals evenly in the ADF. Check to make sure paper guides meet the width of mixed size originals.	
ADF CANNOT BE USED AFTER [Reset] IS PRESSED	Fully close ADF. Originals should conform to the recommended size and weight. Position originals properly in the ADF. Set to use ADF in the Initial Setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference for details.	
FINISHER/FOLDING UNIT DOES NOT OPERATE	Check for a paper misfeed and remove it, as required. Properly close finisher door/Folding unit door.	
ADD TONER MESSAGE IS DIS- PLAYED	New toner supply is needed. Follow instructions for adding toner.	
CALL FOR PM IS DISPLAYED IN MESSAGE AREA	Contact your service representative for Preventive Maintenance.	
APS SELECTS THE WRONG PA- PER SIZE	Paper guides must be adjusted exactly to the size of originals.	
IN MIXED ORIGINAL MODE, A MESSAGE TO LOAD A RE- QUIRED PAPER SIZE DISPLAYS, EVEN THOUGH THAT SIZE IS LOADED IN ONE OF THE TRAYS	Paper sizes loaded in the trays must be consistent with the tray position size; otherwise, the tray key on the Copy Screen will blink.	
THE COPY SCREEN DOES NOT DISPLAY SETTINGS AS DE- SCRIBED IN USER'S GUIDE	Check with the machine manager, as Initial Settings may have been changed.	

bizhub PRO C5501 5-13

Symptom	Remedy
"PLEASE CHECK ORIGINAL"	This message appears when the copier detects a non-standard paper size on the original glass. Select paper size and press [Start]. 1.000 magnification will be selected automatically. If this message continues to be displayed after selecting paper size, select 1.000 magnification, even if it is already indicated, then press [Start]. If desired, ask your service representative to enable the machine to default to 1.000 magnification in this situation.
SHEET INSERTION RESULT IS NOT AS EXPECTED	Blank insertion: Be sure manuscript originals do not already include blank sheets in the locations designated for sheet insertion. Print insertion: To ensure that chapter sheets in 1-2 mode always appear on the right hand side in the finished set, insertion sheets must be designated on the page setting screen with odd numbers, not even. If required, make an even numbered original page odd by inserting a blank sheet in front of that page, so that the blank sheet is even and the insertion sheet is odd.
FINISHER STAPLE RESULT IS NOT AS EXPECTED	The 2 staple position functions only on copy paper that is loaded vertically (portrait style). Check to see if Rotation functions. Release it, if necessary.
COPIES SKEW IN THE STAPLED SETS	Check to see if copy paper is excessively curled in the tray. Reload the copy paper upside down. Check to see if large-sized copies meet the secondary (sub) tray when fully output before being stapled. Release the lock of the secondary (sub) tray, then slightly lift it upward.
USING PUNCH, COPIES CAN- NOT BE PUNCHED	Check to see if the Punch Waste Basket indicator lights in red on the Machine Status Screen. Empty the waste basket.
COPIES CANNOT BE STAPLED OR PUNCHED IN POSITION	Check to make sure the side guide plates are securely aligned to the copy paper in the paper tray to be used.

5-14 bizhub PRO C5501

6 Maintenance

6 Maintenance

6.1 Cleaning the machine

In order to maintain optimum copy quality, always keep the following areas clean.

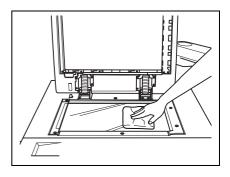


Reminder

Never use paint solvents, such as benzene or thinners, to clean the following areas.

Cleaning the original glass

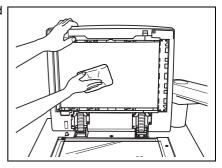
- → Raise the ADF, then clean the original glass with a soft, dry cloth.
 - The glass may also clean with a soft cloth dampened slightly with water, if it is difficult to clean.



Cleaning the ADF guide cover

Keep the ADF guide cover clean; otherwise soil marks may be copied or the original size cannot be detected correctly.

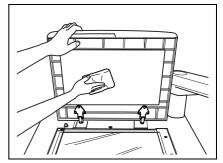
→ Raise the ADF, then clean the cover with a soft, dry cloth.



Cleaning the original cover

Keep the original cover clean; otherwise soil marks may be copied, resulting in dark lines on the copies.

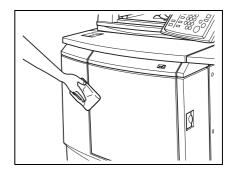
→ Raise the original cover, then clean it with a soft, dry cloth.



bizhub PRO C5501 6-3

Cleaning the machine external

→ Clean the external surface of the machine with a soft cloth dampened with a mild household detergent.



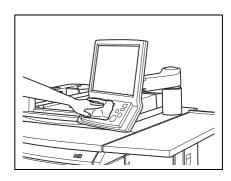


Reminder

Be sure to turn off the main power switch before cleaning it.

Cleaning the control panel

→ Clean the control panel with a soft, dry cloth.





Reminder

Pressing too hard on the control panel or the touch panel may damage them.

Never use a household detergent, glass cleaner, benzine, or thinner to clean the control panel and touch panel.

6-4 bizhub PRO C5501

6.2 Checking copy count

The Utility Menu Screen allows you to view the current indication of the following counters as a list.

- Total count
- Full color count
- Single color count
- Black count
- Printer total count
- Copy total count
- Scanner total count

The product life cycle such as of the drum, developer, transfer belt, charged electrode, etc. can also be checked and printed from the Copy Screen, if desired.



Detail

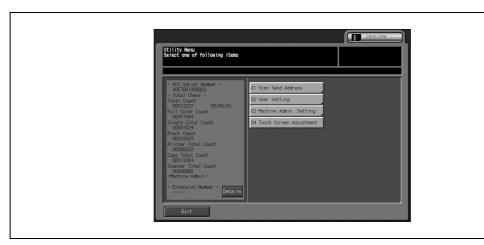
Machine can be set to display the Utility Menu Screen available for displaying and editing the CMS part count list (part name, P/N, limit), and also resetting the count. For details, please contact your service representative.

To check the counters

1 Press [Utility/Counter] on the control panel.

The Utility Menu Screen will be displayed.

- 2 Check the counter information.
 - The counter information is displayed on the left side of the screen.



- Touching [Exit] will exit the Utility mode and restore the previous screen.

bizhub PRO C5501 6-5

3 Touch [Detail].



The product life cycle such as of the drum, developer, transfer belt, charged electrode, etc. will be displayed.

If printed list is not desired, touch [Exit] to exit the Utility mode and restore the previous screen.

4 Print the counter list.

Touch [COPY] tab to display the Copy Screen.
 Select the desired paper size, then press [Start].

After the counter list is printed out, the Utility mode will be released automatically and the previous screen will be restored.



Note

Touching [Detail] in step 3 will also display the [System Info.] key. Touch this key to display the system information of this machine.

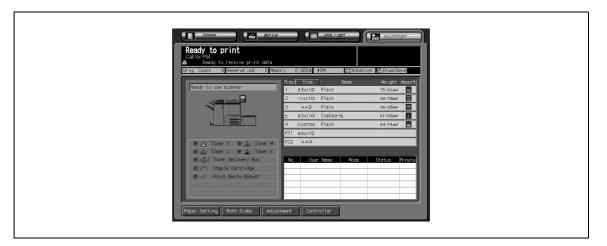
6-6 bizhub PRO C5501

6

6.3 Preventive maintenance

After a set number of copies (150,000 copies) have been made on your machine, Preventive Maintenance (PM) will be required for maintaining optimal performance.

When preventive maintenance is due, a message and the PM icon ($\ref{1}$) will prompt you to contact your service representative for maintenance.





Detail

The machine manager can call for service using the Utility setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

In this case, you don't have to make a call for preventive maintenance, because your machine has been monitored automatically by your service representative.

bizhub PRO C5501 6-7

Specifications

7

7 Specifications

7.1 Main body specifications

Main body

Item	Description
Name	bizhub PRO C5501
Туре	Console type
Document holder	Stationary
Photoconductor	OPC
Luminous source	Xenon lamp
Copying system	Laser electrostatic transfer method
Developing system	Dry-type dual-component reverse magnetic brush developing
Fusing system	Belt fixed
Density adjustment	Copy Density: Automatic and manual (9 levels) Background adjustment: Manual (9 levels)
Magnification ratios	Full size: \times 1.000 \pm 1.0% or less Enlargement (Fixed Zoom): \times 1.154, \times 1.224, \times 1.414, \times 2.000 Reduction (Fixed Zoom): \times 0.500, \times 0.866, \times 0.816, \times 0.707 Zoom with Constant X and Y Ratio: \times 0.250 to 4.000 (in 0.001 increments) Independent Zoom: vertical \times 0.250 to 4.000 (in 0.001 increments), horizontal 0.250 to 4.000 (in 0.001 increments) User-set zoom ratio: 3
Scanning resolution	600 dpi × 600 dpi
Printing resolution	600 dpi \times 600 dpi (1,800 dpi: when selecting printer smoothing function)
Gradation/Color	256 (8 bits) / C, M, Y, K
Paper types	Main body trays (tray1 to 3): 64 g/m² to 209 g/m², 64 g/m² to 256 g/m² (A4/8.5"×11" or larger) Bypass tray: 64 g/m² to 300 g/m² (simplex mode), 64 g/m² to 256 g/m² (duplex mode) labels, tab paper, coated paper
Copy speed	55 sheets/min. (A4 , 33 sheets/min. (A3 , 37 sheets/min. (B4 , 44 sheets/min. (A4 , 49 sheets/min. (B5 , 65 sheets/min. (B5 , 27)
Multiple copies/sets	1 to 9,999 copies/1 to 9,999 sets
Memory	256 MB per each color (C, M, Y, K)
Document	Types: sheets, books (spread), three-dimensional objects Size: Max. 303 mm × 438 mm Thickness: Max. 30 mm, Weight: 6.8 kg Detectable sizes for original glass: A3 □, B4 ×, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □/□, A6 □ Detectable sizes for ADF: A3 □, B4 □, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □/□, A6 □, 11" × 17" □, 8" × 13" □, 8.5" × 11" □
Paper sizes	Trays 1, 2, and 3 Standard sizes: SRA3 , SRA4 , A3 , B4 , A4 , A4 , B5 , B5 , A5 , 12" × 18" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 11" , Custom sizes: Max. 330 × 487 mm to min. 140 × 182 mm Bypass tray Standard sizes: SRA3 , SRA4 , A3 , B4 , A4 , A4 , B5 , B5 , A6 , A6 , 13" × 19" , 12" × 18" , 11" × 17" , 8.5" × 11" , B6 , A6 , 330 × 487 mm to min. 100 × 148 mm
Image blank	Leading edge, front and rear: Less than 2.0 mm \pm 2.0 mm Trailing edge: Less than 1.5 mm \pm 1.5 mm

bizhub PRO C5501 7-3

Item	Description
Paper tray capacity	1, 2 and 3 500 sheets (80 g/m ² paper) Bypass tray 250 sheets (80 g/m ² paper)
Warm-up time	Approx. 7 minutes
First copy	Approx. 5.0 seconds (A4) in Black mode Approx. 6.5 seconds (A4) in Full color/Single color mode
Noise	78 dB (main body)
Power requirements	AC 230 V, 16 A, 50 Hz
Power consumption	Max. 3,400 W (main body)
Weight	Approx. 360 kg
Dimensions	786 (W) \times 992 (D) \times 1056 (H) mm (main body and original cover without control panel)
Space requirements	293 mm or more on the back 100 mm or more on both sides

In order to incorporate improvements, these product specifications are subject to change without notice.

7-4 bizhub PRO C5501

7.2 Option specifications

Automatic document feeder DF-609

Item	Description
Name	DF-609
Document feed methods	Standard original: Single-sided, double-sided Mixed original: Single-sided, double-sided
Original paper types	Single-sided original: 35 to 200 g/m ² Double-sided original: 50 to 200 g/m ²
Original sizes	128 mm × 139.7 mm to 297 mm × 431.8 mm Detectable sizes: A3 □, B4 □, A4 □/□, B5 □/□, A5 □/□, 11" × 17" □, 8" × 13" □, 8.5" × 11" □
Capacity of document feeder	Max. 100 sheets (80 g/m ²)
Power source	Supplied from main body
Dimensions	588 (W) × 519 (D) × 135 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 14.5 kg

Large capacity unit LU-202

Item	Description
Name	LU-202
Function	1 paper tray
Configuration	Feed paper into main body
Paper sizes	SRA3 □, SRA4 □/□, A3 □, B4 □, A4 □/□, B5/□, 13" × 19" □, 11" × 17" □, 8.5" × 11" □
Paper type	Plain paper, High quality paper, Coated paper
Paper weight	64 g/m ² to 300 g/m ²
Paper tray capacity	2,500 sheets (80 g/m²)
Dimensions	710 (W) × 639 (D) × 477(H) mm
Weight	Approx. 40 kg
Power source	Supplied from main body

Finisher FS-520

Item	Description
Name	FS-520
Finisher type	Offset catch tray
Output tray	Primary (main) and secondary (sub) trays
Function	Straight delivery (collated, uncollated) Offset delivery (collate and offset, uncollate and offset) Staple delivery (corner staple, 2 staples)
Paper Types	Primary (main) tray: 60 to 105 g/m ² See p. 3-3 for details.
Paper Sizes	See p. 3-6 for details.
Paper tray capacity	See p. 3-5 for details.
Maximum power consumption	80 W or less
Dimensions	424 (674.5 when primary (main) tray is attached/ 790.5 when the tray is pulled out) (W) \times 656 (D) \times 990 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 60 kg

bizhub PRO C5501 7-5

Finisher FS-607

Item	Description
Name	FS-607
Finisher type	Offset catch tray
Output tray	Primary (main), secondary (sub), and folding mode trays
Function	Straight delivery (collated, uncollated) Offset delivery (collate and offset, uncollate and offset) Staple delivery (corner staple, 2 staples) Multi half fold, Fold & staple, Multi tri-fold
Staple capacity	Max. 50 sheets (64 g/m ² to 105 g/m ²) Max. 20 sheets (106 g/m ² to 209 g/m ²) (when using trays 1 to 4 or bypass tray)
Fold & Staple binding pitch	128 to 160 mm
Fold & Staple binding capacity	Max. 20 sheets (64 g/m ² to 80 g/m ²) Max. 16 sheets (81 g/m ² to 105 g/m ²) (when using trays 1 to 5 or bypass tray)
Paper Types	Primary (main) tray: 60 to 105 g/m ² (See p. 3-3 for details.)
Paper Sizes	See p. 3-6 for details.
Paper tray capacity	See p. 3-5 for details.
Maximum power consumption	80 W or less
Dimensions	424 (674.5 when primary (main) tray is attached/ 790.5 when the tray is pulled out) (W) \times 656 (D) \times 990 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 60 kg

Punch kit PK-512/PK-513

Item	Description
Name	PK-512/PK-513
Function	Punch file holes
Number of holes	PK-512: 2 or 4 holes PK-513: Swedish 4 holes
Hole pitch	PK-512: 80 ± 0.5 mm PK-513: 21/70/21 ± 0.5 mm Adjustable range: ± 5 mm
Hole diameter	6.5 ± 0.5 mm
Maximum power consumption	40 W or less
Dimensions	130 (W) × 470 (D) × 115 (H) mm
Power source	Supplied from Finisher FS-520/FS-607
Weight	Approx. 3 kg

Output tray OT-502

Item	Description
Name	OT-502
Function	Paper output tray for main body
Output tray capacity	150 sheets
Dimensions	342 (470 when tray is pulled out) (W) × 456 (D) × 170 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 1.85 kg

7-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Other options

- Original cover OC-506
- Dehumidification fan heater HT-503
- Hard disk unit HD-506
- Image controller

bizhub PRO C5501 7-7



7 Specifications

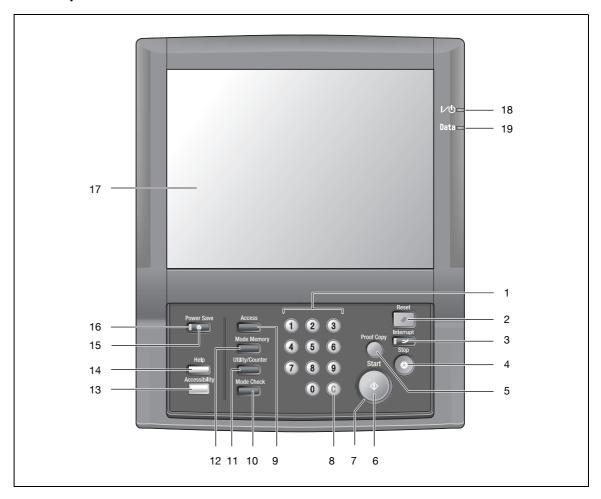
7-8 bizhub PRO C5501

8 Before making copies

8 Before making copies

8.1 Control panel and basic screens

8.1.1 Control panel



No.	Name	Description
1	Keypad	Enters values for various settings, including the print quantity and password.
2	[Reset] key	Restores machine to the initial settings.
3	[Interrupt] key	Stops copying/printing/scanning in progress to allow a simple copying job.
4	[Stop] key	Ceases the copying sequence; deletes the stored memory.
5	[Proof Copy] key	Prints a single set of sample copy to check whether the current settings are specified properly.
6	[Start] key	Activates various machine operations.
7	[Start] LED	Lights in green when machine operation is available, and turns red if any operation cannot be started.
8	[C] (Clear) key	Allows resetting of print quantity.
9	[Access] key	Sets the machine to allow the operation only when the user/account name and password are entered, if user authentication or account track settings have been applied.
10	[Mode Check] key	Displays the Mode Check Screen to view the copy settings currently made.
11	[Utility/Counter] key	Displays the Utility Screen or various counters.

bizhub PRO C5501 8-3

No.	Name	Description
12	[Mode Memory] key	Registers/Recalls the desired copy settings, and also recalls previous job settings.
13	[Accessibility] key	Adjusts the response time in touch panel/control panel key operation.
14	[Help] key	Displays the Help Screen that provides information on the currently selected function.
15	[Power Save] key	Enables temporary use of the machine when the [Power Save] LED is lit, or activates power-saving mode for times when the machine is inactive.
16	[Power Save] LED	Lights when any power-saving mode is activated, machine power is off due to the timer function, or user password is required for use.
17	Touch panel	Displays various screens and messages to allow the function setting.
18	Power LED	Lights up in red when the main power is turned on, then turns green when the sub power switch is turned on.
19	Data LED	Blinks while a print job is being received.

⚠ CAUTION

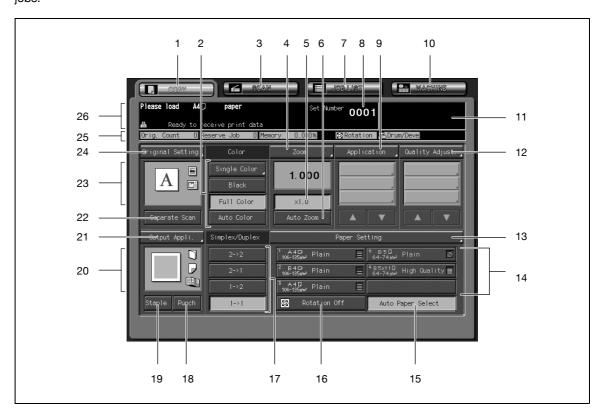
The touch panel is covered with glass.

→ Do not drop heavy objects on the glass, or put excess weight or pressure on it; otherwise the glass may break or scratched and you may be injured.

8-4 bizhub PRO C5501

8.1.2 Copy screen

The Copy Screen is used to select the desired copy conditions when setting a new copy job and also reserve jobs.



No.	Name	Description
1	[COPY] tab	Touched to display the Copy Screen.
2	Color mode area	Used to specify the desired color mode (single color, black, full color, or auto color).
3	[SCAN] tab	Used to display the Scanner Screen.
4	[Zoom] key	Touched to select the desired magnification ratio using preset ratios, user preset ratios, zoom mode or vertical/horizontal zoom mode.
5	[×1.0] key	Touched to copy in 1.000 magnification ratio.
6	[Auto Zoom] key	Touched to activate the Auto Zoom mode.
7	[JOB LIST] tab	Used to display the Job List Screen.
8	Set Number indicator	Indicates the print quantity entered from the control panel keypad.
9	[Application] key	Touched to select various application functions.
10	[MACHINE] tab	Used to display the Machine Status Screen.
11	Output indicator	Indicates the print count while printing.
12	[Quality Adjust.] key	Touched to specify the image quality of the originals, including copy density, color adjustment, etc.
13	[Paper Setting] key	Touched to use different paper type from that indicated on the tray key.
14	Tray keys	Display specified paper setting and amount remaining in each tray.
15	[Auto Paper Select] key	Touched to activate APS (Automatic Paper Selection).
16	[Rotation Off] key	Touched to release the Rotation function.
17	Simplex/Duplex mode area	Used to select the copy mode (1-1, 1-2, 2-1, or 2-2).
18	[Punch] key	Touched to use Punch mode.
19	[Staple] key	Touched to use Staple mode.
20	Output icon area	Displays the icon of the output settings currently specified.
21	[Output Appli.] key	Touched to specify the desired output mode.

bizhub PRO C5501 8-5

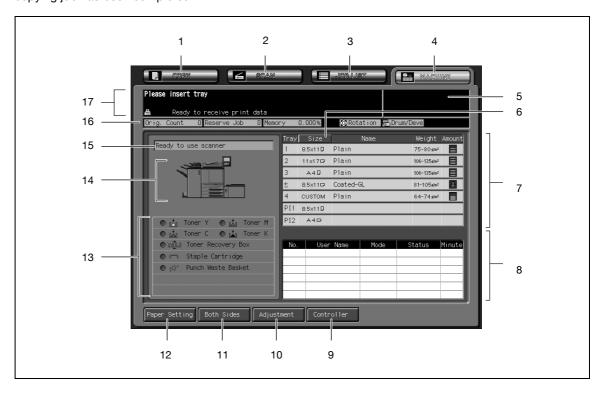
No.	Name	Description
22	[Separate Scan] key	Touched to store scanned images into memory.
23	Original icon area	Displays the icon of the original settings currently specified.
24	[Original Setting] key	Touched to specify the condition of the original to be scanned.
25	Machine status icons	Display to indicate various machine status.
26	Message area	Displays the machine status and procedure required at that time.

8-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Before making copies

8.1.3 Machine status screen

The Machine Status Screen displays when copying operation becomes available after warmup, or when any copying job has been completed.



No.	Name	Description
1	[COPY] tab	Touched to display the Copy Screen.
2	[SCAN] tab	Touched to display the Scanner Screen.
3	[JOB LIST] tab	Touched to display the Job List Screen.
4	[MACHINE] tab	Touched to display the Machine Status Screen, and blinks in red when machine trouble occurs.
5	Count/Set indicator	Indicates the print quantity entered from the control panel keypad, and also indicates the print count on the left of the set count while printing.
6	[Size] key	Touched to display the actual dimensions preset for the tray loaded with custom paper size.
7	Tray setting list	Displays the paper setting made for each tray, and also displays the paper sizes loaded in the Post inserter. The currently selected tray will be indicated in different color.
8	Job list	Displays the current status of the jobs to be operated on the machine.
9	[Controller] key	Touched to set the controller. (Controller setting is not available for the machine without optional printer controller.)
10	[Adjustment] key	Touched to make adjustments of the machine and optional equipment.
11	[Both Sides] key	Touched to make adjustments of the image to be printed on both sides of paper loaded in each tray.
12	[Paper Setting] key	Touched to make paper setting for each tray
13	Maintenance & supply indicators	Light in red when toner/staple supply is required or when trash basket is full.
14	Machine status display	Prompts you if any door or cover is open.
15	Scanner message	Displays the current status of scanning job.
16	Icon area	Displays various machine status icons.
17	Message area	Displays messages concerning machine status.

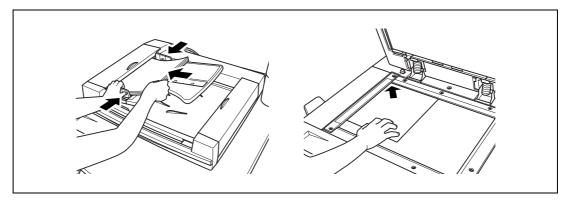
bizhub PRO C5501 8-7

8.2 General copy operation

Follow the procedure below to make a basic copy.

How to make a basic copy

- ✓ The following procedure is basic and not always applicable to the operation of selected copy conditions. When using a specific function, be sure to follow the procedure described in each section.
- 1 Position the original.



- For details on positioning the original, see page 8-11.
- 2 Display Copy Screen.
 - Touch [COPY] tab on the Machine Status Screen to display the Copy Screen.



- 3 Set copy conditions as desired.
 - The following settings are available on the Copy Screen.

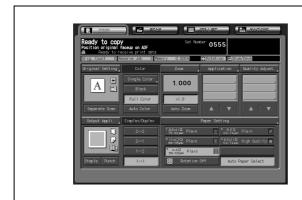
[Original Setting]: See page 9-3. [Separate Scan]: See page 9-16. Color mode: See page 9-18. [Zoom]: See page 9-19. [Application]: See page 11-3.

[Quality Adjust.]: See page 10-3. [Output Appli.]: See page 12-3. Simplex/Duplex mode: See page 9-23.

[Paper Setting]: See page 9-30. [Rotation Off]: See page 9-32.

8-8 bizhub PRO C5501

4 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad.





For details on entering print quantity, see page 8-14.
 Entered quantity will be displayed on the touch panel.

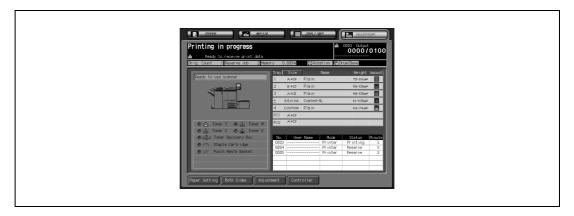
- 5 Press [Start] on the control panel.
 - When the machine starts scanning the original, the current job status will be displayed on the popup menu.







- The reserve job setting is available from this popup menu. Touch [Yes] or [Close] to return to the Copy Screen. See page 9-45 for details.
- If No is touched, the Machine Status Screen will be restored.



The current job will be displayed in the job list, with the count/set quantity indicated at the upper right corner of the screen.

bizhub PRO C5501 8-9



Detail

The screen to be displayed after machine power is turned on can be selected either from the Machine Status Screen (initially selected) or the Copy Screen. The popup menu will vary depending on this selection.

The Job List Screen is provided to change the operation order of reserve jobs or cancel the reserve job. See page 14-3 for details.

To suspend the job in progress, press [Stop]. For details, see "To stop scanning/printing" on page 8-17.

8-10 bizhub PRO C5501

Before making copies

8.3 Positioning the original

Use the ADF or original glass to scan the original.

8.3.1 Positioning originals into the ADF

The ADF (Automatic document feeder) automatically feeds up to 100 originals directly to the original glass area, starting with the top sheet. The ADF should only be used for unstapled, smooth, flat originals.

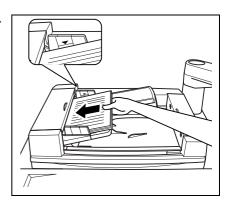


Detail

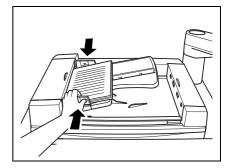
Be sure not to use unsuitable ADF originals. For details of the original available in the ADF, see page 3-9.

Positioning the original in normal mode

- ✔ Before placing originals in the tray, be sure the ADF is closed fully. Once closed, do not open the document feeder, otherwise the selected copy conditions may be altered automatically.
- ✓ Do not load more than 100 sheets of the original or over the limit line indicated on the paper guides; otherwise the original may be misfed or damaged, or machine trouble may be caused.
- ✓ Copy result may not be satisfactory if the original should not be positioned correctly, especially when using duplex mode, Staple, Half Fold, or Booklet Pagination. See page 9-3 for details.
- 1 Arrange the original in order.
- Position the original FACE UP (with page one UP) in the ADF.
 - The direction of the original should conform to the original direction icon displayed on the Copy Screen.
 Up to 100 sheets of the original can be set at a time.



3 Adjust paper guides.





Reminder

Once closed, do not open the document feeder, otherwise the selected copy conditions may be altered automatically.

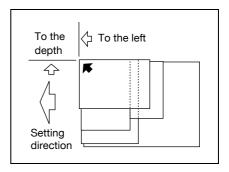
bizhub PRO C5501 8-11

8

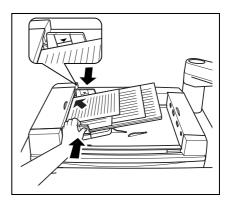
Positioning the original in mixed mode

Mixed size originals can be copied together from the document feeder. For the sizes available in the Mixed mode, see page 3-9.

- 1 Arrange the original in order.
 - Arrange the mixed sizes originals aligning them to the left and depth as shown in the illustration.



- Position the original FACE UP (with page one UP) in the ADF.
 - The direction of the original should conform to the original direction icon displayed on the Copy Screen.
 - Up to 100 sheets of the original can be set at a time.
- 3 Adjust paper guides.





Reminder

Once closed, do not open the document feeder, otherwise the selected copy conditions may be altered automatically.



Detail

To use the Mixed mode, see procedure on page 9-9.

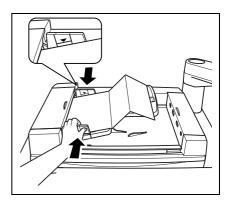
8-12 bizhub PRO C5501

8

Positioning the original in Z-folded mode

Z-Folded mode detects the folded original size without using the size detection sensor of the ADF. For the sizes available in the Z-Folded mode, see page 3-9.

- 1 Arrange the original in order.
- 2 Position the original FACE UP (with page one UP) in the ADF.
 - The direction of the original should conform to the original direction icon displayed on the Copy Screen.
 - Up to 100 sheets of the original can be set at a time.
- 3 Adjust paper guides.





Reminder

Once closed, do not open the document feeder, otherwise the selected copy conditions may be altered automatically.



Detail

To use the Z-Folded original mode, see procedure on page 9-10.

8.3.2 Positioning the original on original glass

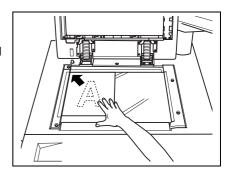
Use the original glass when the original is not suitable for use with the ADF, e.g., when size is incompatible, or when the original is folded, stapled, torn, or in generally poor condition.



Detail

For details of the original unavailable in the ADF, see page 3-9.

- ✓ Copy result may not be satisfactory if the original should not be positioned correctly, especially when using duplex mode, Staple, Half Fold, or Booklet Pagination. See page 9-3 for details.
- ✓ When Book Copy, Auto mode in Repeat, or Image Centering is selected, the ADF should be kept open while scanning the original. For details on each function, see Section 11.
- 1 Raise the ADF.
- Position the original FACE DOWN in the left rear corner, aligning the edge with the left measuring guide.
 - The direction of the original should conform to the Original direction icon displayed on the Copy Screen.



3 Gently close the ADF to prevent the original from shifting on the glass.

bizhub PRO C5501 8-13

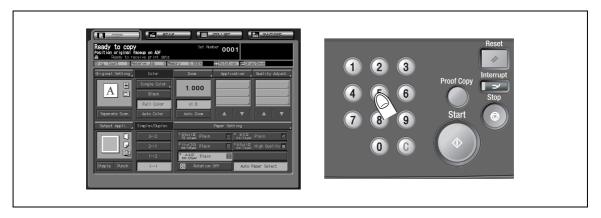
8.4 Setting print quantity

This section describes how to set or change the print quantity.

To set print quantity

The machine is initially set to copy the original set in amounts determined by the print quantity setting, then output non-sorted sets.

- ✔ Print quantity can be entered in any instance of the procedure unless the control panel keypad is temporarily used for entering other values.
- → Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad.



Entered quantity will be displayed on the touch panel.

To change print quantity

Follow the procedure below to change the print quantity that has been already entered.

Press [C] (clear quantity).

The quantity displayed on the touch panel will return to 1.



2 Enter the correct quantity from the control panel keypad.

Newly entered quantity will be displayed on the touch panel.

8-14 bizhub PRO C5501

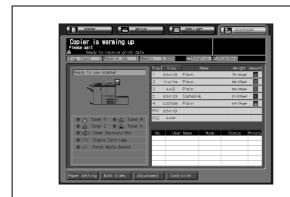
8.5 Setting job during warmup

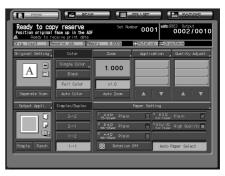
While the machine is warming up after power is turned on, you can select copy conditions and start scanning so that the machine may start printing immediately the machine engine is ready.

Service can set the machine to disable this function. Contact your service representative, if desired.

To scan the original during warmup

- 1 Turn on the main power switch and sub power switch of the machine.
 - For details on turning on the power, see page 2-10.
- Display the Copy Screen to check that the message "Ready to set reserve job" is displayed in the message area.
 - A few seconds after the Wake-up Screen appears on the touch panel, the Machine Status Screen will be displayed.
 - Touch [COPY] tab to change the Machine Status Screen to display the Copy Screen, then check that the message "Ready to set reserve job" is displayed in the message area.





- 3 Set the desired copy conditions, and enter the print quantity.
 - For details on setting print quantity, see page 8-14.
- 4 Position the original FACE UP in the ADF or FACE DOWN on the original glass.
 - For details on positioning the original, see page 8-11.
- 5 Press [Start].
 - When scanning the original for the job is started, the popup menu will appear on the Copy Screen.





- Touch [Yes] or [Close] to return to the Copy Screen to make another reserve job setting. See page 9-45 for details.
- If [No] is touched, the Machine Status Screen will be restored.



The current job will be displayed in the job list, with the count/set quantity indicated at the upper right corner of the screen.



Detail

The screen to be displayed after machine power is turned on can be selected either from the Machine Status Screen (initially selected) or the Copy Screen. The popup menu will vary depending on this selection.

The Job List Screen is provided to change the operation order of reserve jobs or cancel the reserve job. See page 14-3 for details.

To suspend the job in progress, press [Stop]. For details, see "To stop scanning/printing" on page 8-17.

8-16 bizhub PRO C5501

Before making copies

8.6 To stop scanning/printing

This section describes how to stop the job currently in process (scanning, printing, or both of scanning and printing).

To stop scanning/printing

- ✓ This procedure is effective only for the job in progress. To stop reserved jobs on standby, operate on the Job List Screen. See Section 14 for details.
- 1 Press [Stop] on the control panel while the current job is in progress.
 - With the popup menu displayed right after pressing [Start] for scanning the original of reserve job, the current job cannot be canceled even if [Stop] is pressed. According to the procedure on page 8-20, touch an appropriate key on the popup menu to clear it.

The current machine operation of the selected job will be suspended, and the popup menu will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



- 2 Touch the desired key on the popup menu.
 - The popup menu will vary according to the job in progress.

Both scanning and printing are in progress

→ Touch [Stop Job] to cancel the job, or touch [Continue] to complete the job.



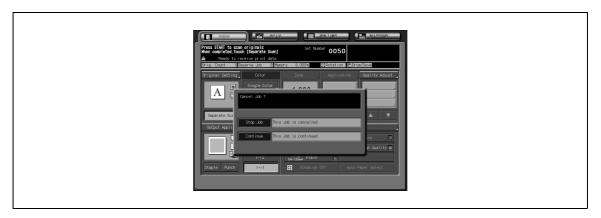


Reminder

Touching [Stop Job] will delete all the scanned data.

Scanning a job in separate scan mode

→ Touch [Stop Job] to cancel the job, or touch [Continue] to complete the job.



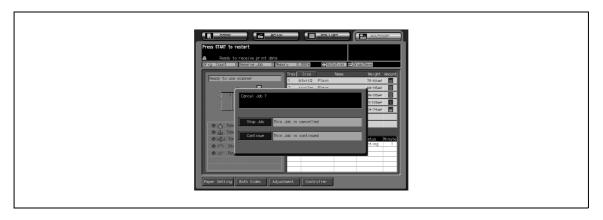


Reminder

Touching [Stop Job] will delete all the scanned data.

Batch printing is in progress

→ Touch [Stop Job] to cancel the job, or touch [Continue] to complete the job.





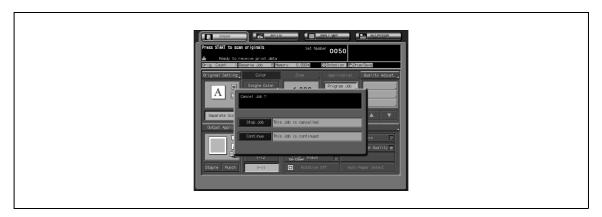
Reminder

Touching [Stop Job] will delete all the scanned data.

8-18 bizhub PRO C5501

Scanning and printing the job using program job

→ Touch [Stop Job] to cancel the job, or touch [Continue] to complete the job.





Reminder

Touching [Stop Job] will delete all the scanned data.

Scanning reserve job while printing

Select to stop scanning, printing, or to stop both operation.

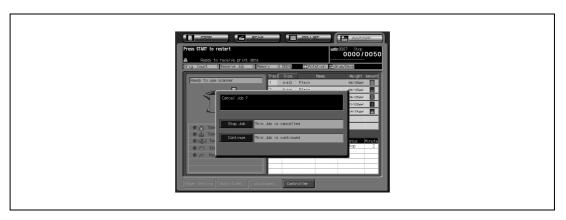
Start scanning the reserve job while printing.

The following popup menu will be displayed.



- 2 Touch [No] to restore the Machine Status Screen.
 - If machine has been set to display the Copy Screen as the initial screen, touch [MACHINE] tab to restore the Machine Status Screen.
- 3 Press [Stop].

Machine operation will be ceased, and the following popup menu will be displayed.



- 4 Select the job to cancel.
 - Touch [Scan] to stop scanning the reserve job and continue printing.
 - Touch [Print] to stop printing and continue the scanning job.
 - Touch [Scan/Print] to cancel both scanning and printing jobs.
 - Touch [Continue] to complete both jobs.



Reminder

All the data scanned for stopped job will be deleted.

8-20 bizhub PRO C5501

Basic job settings

9 Basic job settings

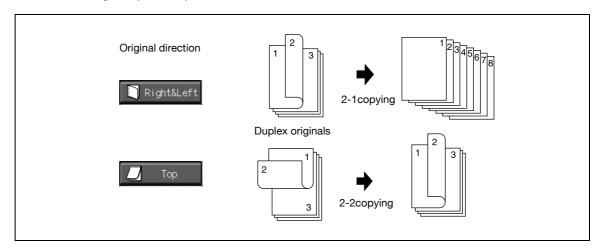
9.1 Original setting

This section describes how to specify the original types and direction.

9.1.1 Selecting binding direction of the original: Bind direction

When copying double-sided originals in 2-1 or 2-2 mode, the copied sets will be exactly the same in page arrangement as the originals.

Use this function to obtain the single- or double-sided copies having the same edge as page top, from double-sided originals printed upside down on the reverse side.

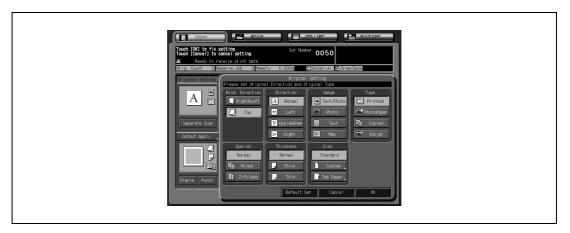




Detail

See "Setting binding direction for duplex copies" on page 12-5 to make double-sided copies upside down on the reverse side, using the originals having the same edge as page top.

- ✓ Top binding is available only in 2-1 or 2-2 copy mode.
- ✓ If the machine restores the initial setting, this function will be reset to Right & Left binding.
- ✓ The machine is set to match the binding direction of the original with the binding direction of copies in Output Application setting automatically. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.
- Position the original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Top] in the Bind Direction area to highlight it.



- 4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9-4 bizhub PRO C5501

9.1.2 Specifying orientation of the original: Direction

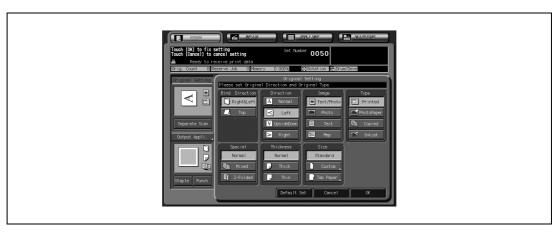
Specify the orientation of the original placed in the ADF or on original glass.

Without this setting, the copy results may not be obtained as expected, especially when making copies under following conditions.

- Copying from double-sided original
- Making double-sided copies
- Combine Originals
- Booklet Pagination
- Book Copy
- Staple, etc.

Using ADF	Using original glass	Key	Description
		A Normal	Select for the original positioned with the top to- ward the rear of the machine. Initially selected as factory default.
		▼ UpsideDown	Select for the original positioned with the top toward the front of the machine.
		▼ Left	Select for the original positioned in the ADF with the top toward the left side of the machine. Or, select for the original positioned on the original glass with the top toward the right side of the machine.
		≥ Right	Select for the original positioned in the ADF with the top toward the right side of the machine. Or, select for the original positioned on the original glass with the top toward the left side of the machine.

- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch the desired original direction key to highlight it.



- 4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9-6 bizhub PRO C5501

9.1.3 Specifying original type: Image/type

Image

Select one of the following modes according to the original image type, so that the copy quality more closely matches to that of the original.

This setting is effective when making copies in Full Color, Single Color, or Black mode.



Detail

The screen type can be selected automatically to match with the Text/Photo or Photo mode when specified.

This function is provided in the User Setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

The density level can be shifted in each of four Image modes.

This function is provided in the User Setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

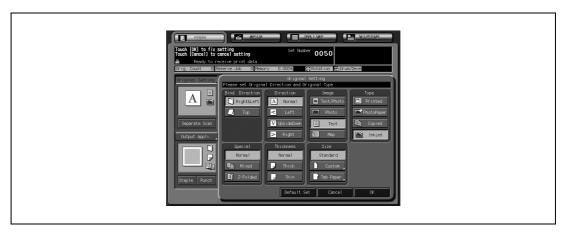
Key	Description
	Select for copying the original including both text and photo image. This mode is specified as factory default.
■ Text/Photo	ABCDE FGHIJK → ABCDE FGHIJK FGHIJK
	Original Text/Photo
	Select to reproduce a half-tone photo image. The copy will closely represent the half-tones of the original image.
Photo	→ 2
	Original Photo
	Select for copying the original composed of text only. In this mode, the edges of copied text will be sharpened to provide higher legibility.
■ Text	ABCDE FGHIJK LMNOP QRSTU VWXYZ ABCDE FGHIJK LMNOP QRSTU VWXYZ ABCDE FGHIJK LMNOP QRSTU VWXYZ
	Original Text
	Select for copying colored original with small text, such as a map.
₽₩ Map	

Type

Use this function to improve the image quality by specifying the printed original type.

Key	Description
	Select for normal original.
₩ Printed	
	Select for photo-printed original.
PhotoPaper	
	Select for copied original.
Q Copied	
	Select for original printed using ink-jet printer.
☐ Inkjet	

- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch the desired mode key to highlight it.
 - Select the desired mode for each of Image and Type.



- 4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9-8 bizhub PRO C5501

C

9.1.4 Copying mixed size originals: Mixed

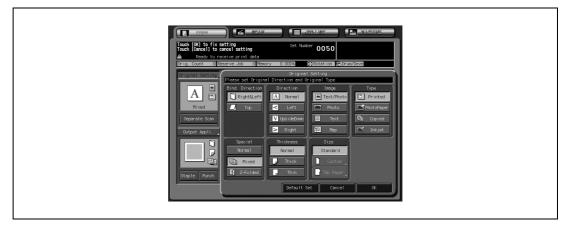
Use the Mixed mode to copy the mixed size original set scanned from the ADF with Auto Paper Select or Auto Zoom activated.

Function	Description
Auto Paper Select	Makes a copy of the same size as the original set.
Auto Zoom	Copies onto a single and desired paper size in appropriate zoom ratio automatically selected for each original page.
	2 1 2 3 4 5

- Load the original in the ADF.
- Combination of the original sizes to be mixed depends on the widest original width (width of the ADF original guides). See "Positioning originals into the ADF" on page 8-11 for details.
- ✓ Do not load more than 100 sheets of the original, otherwise the original may be misfed or damaged, or machine trouble may be caused.
 - If the number of original sheets exceeds 100, divide them into blocks to scan. For details, see "Separate scan mode" on page 9-16.
- ✓ To scan the original from the original glass, Separate Scan mode is required. For details, see "Separate scan mode" on page 9-16.
- ✓ With Mixed specified, Auto Paper Select will function automatically. To copy onto a single and desired paper size, manually specify Auto Zoom. For details, see page 9-22.
- 1 Position the original.
 - Arrange the mixed size originals aligning the left and rear sides.
 For details, see "Positioning originals into the ADF" on page 8-11.
- 2 Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.

The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.

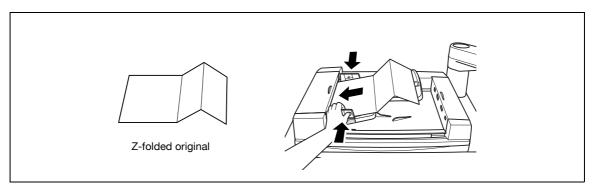
3 Touch [Mixed] to highlight it.



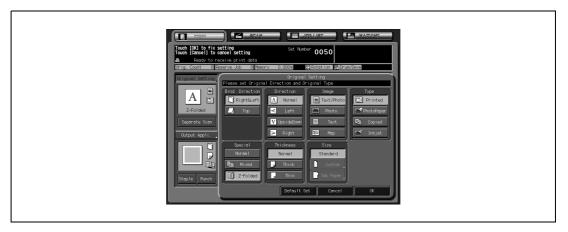
- 4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9.1.5 Copying Z-folded original: Z-folded

Use the Z-Folded mode with the document feeder to copy Z-folded originals. Otherwise, the size detection sensor of the ADF may function incorrectly.



- ✓ Load the original in the ADF.
- ✓ This mode requires more scanning time to detect the original size.
- 1 Position the original.
 - Normal originals can be set together with the Z-folded original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Z-Folded] to highlight it.



- 4 Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

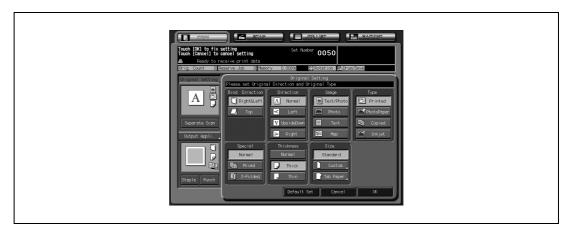
9-10 bizhub PRO C5501

9.1.6 Specifying original thickness: Thickness

Use this function with the ADF to copy thin or thick originals.

Key	Description
Thick	Select for the original weight 129 g/m ² to 200 g/m ² .
, Thin	Select for the original weight 35 g/m ² to 49 g/m ² .

- ✓ Load the original in the ADF.
- ✓ Avoid using Thin mode for double-sided originals, otherwise the originals may be damaged.
- ✓ This function is compatible with all the other functions.
- 1 Position the original in the ADF.
- 2 Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Thin] or [Thick] to highlight it.
 - For the original of normal thickness (50 g/m² to 128 g/m²), select [Normal].



- 4 Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

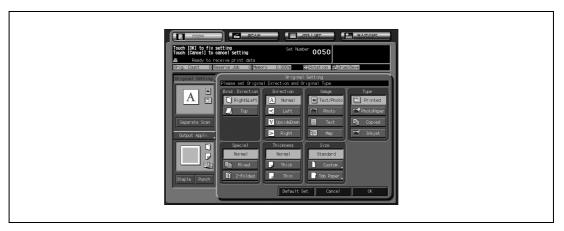
9.1.7 Copying non-standard size original: Custom

The machine usually detects the standard size of the original fed through ADF or positioned on the original glass (Standard mode).

Use the Custom mode to specify the desired standard size as scanning area irrespective of actual size of the original.

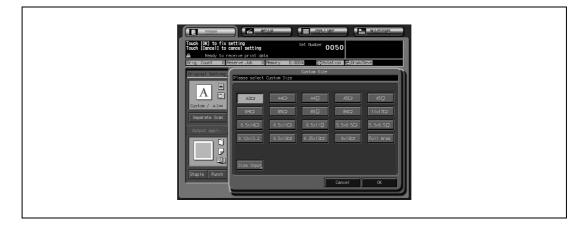
This function also allows you to specify/register the desired special size in 1 mm increments, and to recall the registered size when needed.

- ✓ Use [Full Area] on the Custom Size menu for small original that cannot be detected in Standard mode.
- Special sizes can be registered in this mode. Registered size information can be utilized later for both the original and copy paper size setting.
- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Custom].



The Custom Size Screen will be displayed.

- 4 Specify the desired scanning size.
 - Selecting from standard size keys:
 Touch the desired size key to highlight it. The machine scans the special size original as selected standard size.

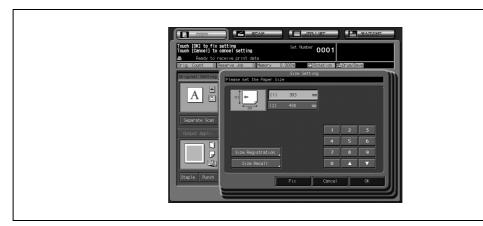


9-12 bizhub PRO C5501

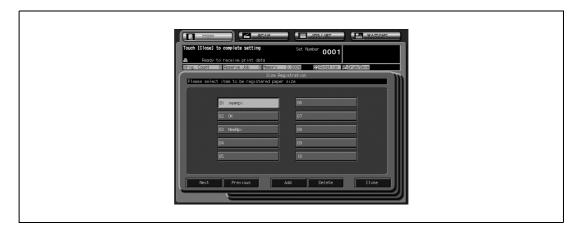
Selecting [Full Area]:
 Select [Full Area] for small original that cannot be detected.



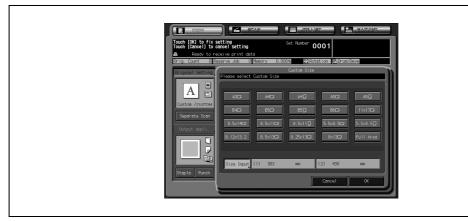
- Specifying a special size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Input] to display the Size Setting Screen.
 - (2) Select the lengthwise/widthwise dimension key to highlight it, then use [▲], [▼], or touch screen keypad to enter the desired special size within the available range from 100 to 303 mm in lengthwise dimension, from 140 to 438 mm in widthwise dimension.
 - (3) Touch [OK] to return to the Custom Size Screen with specified size displayed.



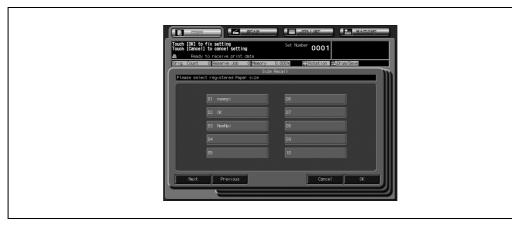
- Registering a special size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Input] to display the Size Setting Screen.
 - (2) Select the lengthwise/widthwise dimension key to highlight it, then use [▲], [▼], or touch screen keypad to enter the desired special size within the available range from 100 to 303 mm in lengthwise dimension, from 140 to 438 mm in widthwise dimension.
 - (3) Touch [Size Registration] to display the Size Registration Screen.
 - (4) Touch the desired number key to highlight it, using [Next] and [Previous] as needed. Select the key with a name displayed to overwrite the size and name registered for that key.



(5) Touch [Add] to display the Input Custom Size Name Screen. Touching [Delete] will display a popup menu to confirm the data deletion. Touch [Yes] to delete the data registered for that key.



- (6) Enter the desired name, then touch [OK] to return to the previous screen.
- (7) Touch [Close] to restore the Size Setting Screen.
- (8) Touch [OK] to return to the Custom Size Screen with specified size displayed.
- Recalling a special size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Input] to display the Size Setting Screen.
 - (2) Touch [Size Recall] to display the Size Recall Screen.
 - (3) Touch the desired number key to highlight it, using [Next] and [Previous] as needed.



- (4) Touch [OK] to restore the Size Setting Screen with recalled size displayed.
- (5) Touch [OK] to return to the Custom Size Screen with specified size displayed.



5 Touch [OK].

The Original Setting Screen will be restored.

9-14 bizhub PRO C5501

- Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9.1.8 Copying tabbed originals: Tab paper

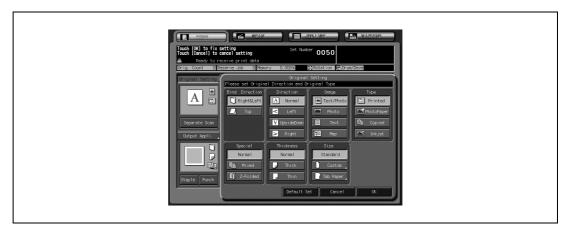
Use Tab Paper mode to scan A4 ☐ or 8.5" × 11" ☐ tabbed original in order to print it including the tab part.



Detail

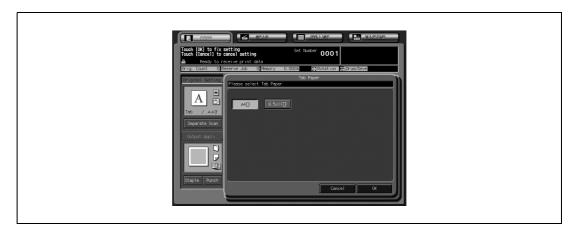
See page 4-10 for details on loading tabbed copy paper in a tray.

- ✓ Available tabbed copy paper sizes are A4 □ or 8.5" × 11" □.
- ✓ When loading tabbed copy paper in a tray, specify the paper type as Tab Paper for that tray in Paper Setting. See page 9-33 for details.
- ✓ Tab extension width for tabbed original: 12.5 mm or less
- ✓ The magnification ratio will be fixed to 1.000 (100%).
- Position the original.
- Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen.
 The Original Setting Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Tab Paper].



The Tab Paper Screen will be displayed.

4 Touch the desired size key to highlight it, then touch [OK].



The Original Setting Screen will be restored.

- 5 Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Default Set] to restore the initial setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9.2 Separate scan mode

A large amount of the original can be divided and scanned into memory.

The ADF accepts only 100 sheets at a time, however, the Separate Scan mode allows you to handle the original that exceeds 100 sheets as a single job.

The multiple original scanned from the original glass, or both from the ADF and original glass, can also be combined into a single job.

- Note that the maximum number of the original available in the ADF does not change in this mode. Do not load more than 100 original sheets or above the limit mark (▼), otherwise paper misfeed or damage to the original may be caused.
- ✓ Separate Scan mode is necessarily used and operates automatically in the following functions: Making double-sided copies using original glass

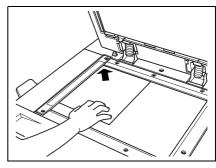
Insert Image

Book Copy

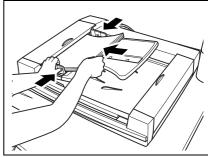
Program Job

Storing image in Program Overlay

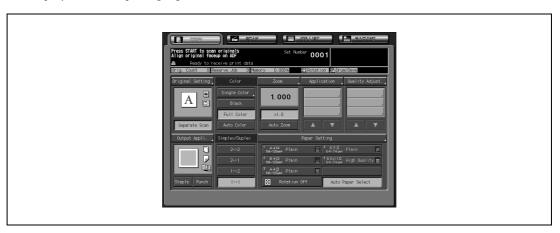
- 1 Position the original.
 - Using the original glass, place the first page FACE DOWN on the original glass.



 Using the ADF, load the original arranged in page order with page one on the top.



- 2 Make copying selections on the Copy Screen, as desired.
- 3 Touch [Separate Scan] to highlight it.



The Separate Scan mode will be activated. If this key is already highlighted, the Separate Scan mode has been activated automatically due to some copy selection.

9-16 bizhub PRO C5501

g

4 Press [Start] on the control panel.
The machine starts scanning the original.



- 5 Replace the original, then press [Start].
 - Memory indicator under the message area of the touch panel allows you to check the remaining memory.
 - Repeat steps 4 and 5 for all original pages to be scanned.



- 6 When scanning is completed, touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.
- 7 Enter the desired print quantity, then press [Start].
 All the data in memory will be output.





Detail

To delete the scanned data without printing or to suspend the printing job, press [Stop]. See "To stop scanning/printing" on page 8-17 for details.

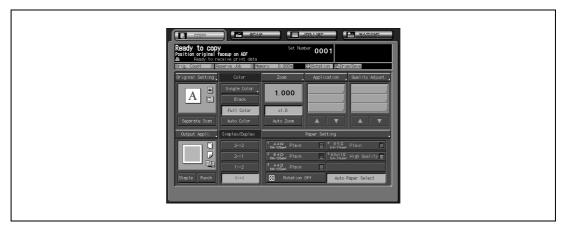
9.3 Selecting color mode

The following four modes are available:

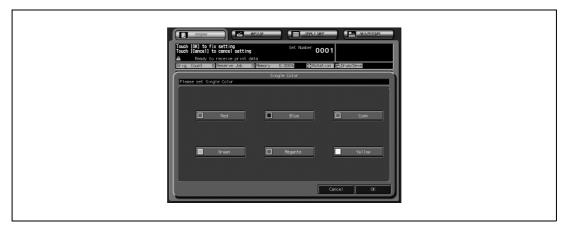
Single Color mode copies in one color selected from red, green, blue, magenta, cyan, and yellow.

Basic job settings

- Black mode makes black-and-white copies whether the original image is colored or not.
- Full Color mode makes full-colored copies whether the original image is colored or not.
- Auto Color mode detects whether the scanned original is colored or black-and-white image, and automatically selects either Full Color mode or Black mode for copying.
- ✓ This machine is provided with color adjustment function. See Section 10: Color Adjustment.
- ✓ Some adjustments cannot be made in Black and Single Color modes: Hue/Saturation/Brightness, Color Balance, Dot in Screen, Color Text in Image Distinction Level, Type in Original Setting
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch the desired color mode key on the Copy Screen to highlight it.



- [Full Color] is already highlighted if initial settings are restored.
- Touching Single Color will display the Single Color Screen. Select the desired color key, then touch [OK].



- 3 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
- 4 Enter the desired print quantity, then press [Start] on the control panel.

9-18 bizhub PRO C5501

g

9.4 **Zoom**

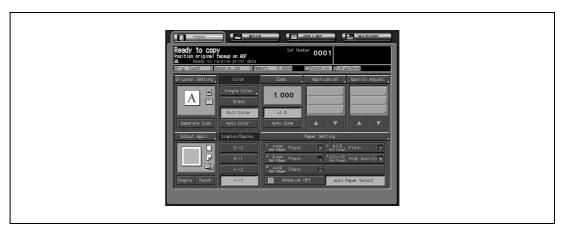
In the initial settings on the Copy Screen, the magnification is automatically set at 1.000 (full size).

This section describes how to change the magnification ratio.

9.4.1 Copying in 1.000 magnification mode

Follow this procedure to make a 100% copy of the original image.

- Press [Reset] on the control panel. If the machine is equipped with the ADF, close it securely before pressing [Reset].
 - The initial setting will be restored. Check that [x1.0] is highlighted to indicate that the 1.000 magnification is selected.



- 2 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
 - Specifying paper size will release 1.000 magnification and set Auto Zoom automatically. In this case, touch [x1.0] to highlight it again.



Detail

The initial settings may be altered by the machine manager. Details can be referred in the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

9.4.2 Changing magnification ratio

The following four modes are provided.

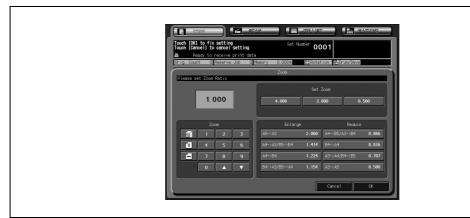
- Zoom (proportional): 0.250 to 4.000 in 0.001 (0.1%) increments
- Zoom (individual): Vertical and horizontal zoom ratios can be specified individually within the range from 0.250 to 4.000 in 0.001 (0.1%) increments.
- Enlarge/Reduce: Select one from the eight ratios (0.500, 0.707, 0.816, 0.866, 1.154, 1.224, 1.414, 2.000) provided on the screen.
- Set Zoom: Select one from the three ratios previously programmed.



Detail

The Enlarge/Reduce and Set Zoom ratio setting is described in the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

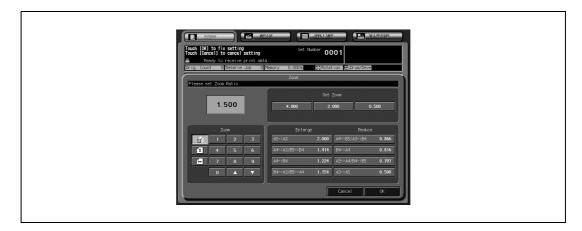
- 1 Touch [Zoom] on the Copy Screen.
- Specify the desired magnification.
 - Zoom (proportional):
 - Touch to highlight the proportional zoom key at the upper left corner in the Zoom area. Then, use the screen keypad to enter the desired magnification ratio. The entered ratio will be displayed on the screen.



- If wrong number is entered, continue by entering the correct number.
 Touching arrow keys [▲] and [▼] will change the ratio in 0.001 (0.1%) steps.
- Zoom (individual):

Touch to highlight the vertical zoom key (the second one in the left side line) in the Zoom area, then use the screen keypad to enter the desired lengthwise magnification ratio.

Similarly, touch the horizontal zoom key (the third one in the left side line) to enter the desired widthwise magnification ratio. The entered ratio will be displayed on the screen.

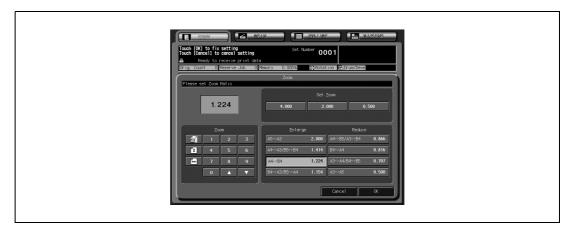


If wrong number is entered, continue by entering the correct number.

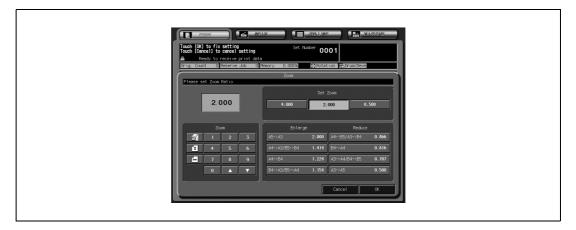
Touching arrow keys [▲] and [▼] will change the ratio in 0.001 (0.1%) steps

9-20 bizhub PRO C5501

Enlarge/Reduce:
 Touch the desired zoom key in the Enlarge/Reduce area.



Preset Zoom:
 Touch the desired preset zoom key in the Preset Zoom area.



- 3 Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.
 - Touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

9.4.3 Setting magnification ratio automatically: Auto zoom

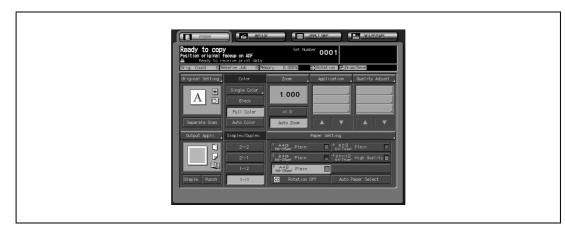
Selecting a tray of the paper size specified as Standard or Tab Paper in Paper Setting, the machine will select an appropriate magnification ratio automatically according to the scanned original size.



Detail

For details of Paper Setting, see page 9-30.

- ✓ Auto Zoom is incompatible with Auto Paper Select, while Rotation is available.
- ✓ Auto Zoom will not function if the tray of the size specified as Custom is selected.
- 1 Position the original.
 - The machine detects the original size automatically.
- 2 Touch a tray key on the Copy Screen to select the desired paper size.
 - Selected tray key will be highlighted, and the [Auto Zoom] key will also be highlighted.



9-22 bizhub PRO C5501

g

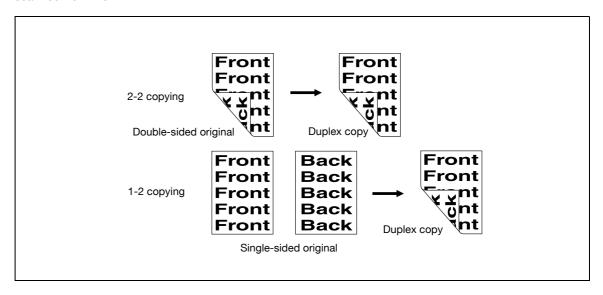
9.5 Simplex/duplex setting

The machine is initially set to simplex (1->1) copy mode to make single-sided copies from single-sided originals.

Follow the procedure below to make double-sided copies from the original scanned from the document feeder or from the original glass, and also to make single-sided copies from double-sided originals.

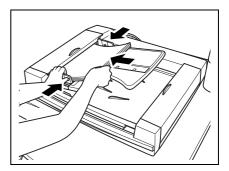
9.5.1 Making double-sided copies using ADF

Follow the procedure below to make double-sided copies from the single-sided or double-sided original scanned from the ADF.

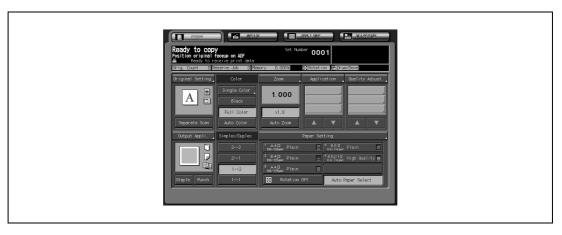


- Specify the original direction on the Original Setting Screen according to that of the original loaded in the ADF.
- ✓ The double-sided copies can be arranged upside down on the back pages.
- ✓ The normal double-sided copies (having the same edge as page top) can be made from double-sided originals printed upside down on the back pages.
- ✓ The machine is set to match the original binding direction and copy binding direction automatically. For details, see the User's guide POD Administrator's reference.

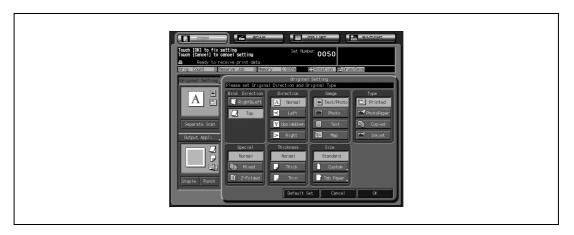
1 Position the original in the ADF.



2 Touch [1->2] or [2->2] on the Copy Screen to highlight it.



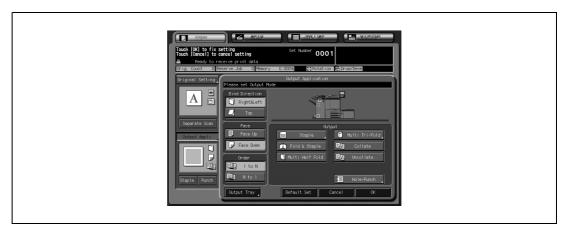
- 3 Specify other conditions for making double-sided copies.
 - Selecting the original set direction and binding direction:
 - (1) Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen to display the Original Setting Screen.
 - (2) Touch to highlight the original direction key according to the direction of the original loaded in the ADF.
 - (3) To make normal double-sided copies (having the same edge as page top) from double-sided originals printed upside down on the back pages, touch [Top] in the Bind Direction area to highlight it.
 - (4) Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.



For details of original direction setting, see page 9-5.
 For details of original binding direction, see page 9-3.

9-24 bizhub PRO C5501

- Selecting the binding direction of double-sided copies:
 - (1) Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen to display the Output Application Screen.
 - (2) Touch the desired binding direction key to highlight it. To make double-sided copies arranged upside down on the back pages, select [Top].
 - (3) Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.

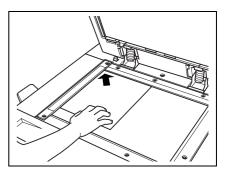


- For details in specifying binding direction of double-sided copies, see page 12-5.

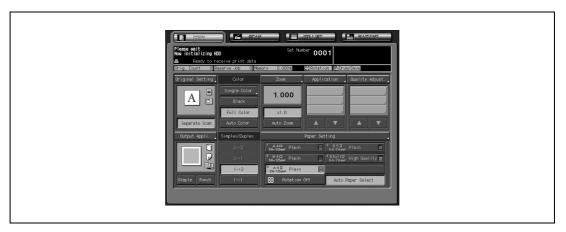
9.5.2 Making double-sided copies using original glass

Use the original glass to scan originals unsuitable for the document feeder.

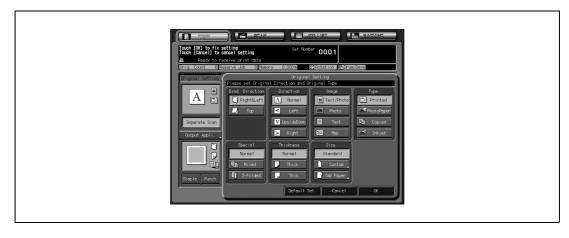
- Use the Separate Scan mode.
- Specify the original direction on the Original Setting Screen according to that of the original placed on the original glass.
- Double-sided copies can be arranged upside down on the back pages.
- ✓ The machine is set to match the original binding direction and copy binding direction automatically. For details, see the User's guide POD Administrator's reference.
- 1 Position the original on the original glass.
 - Open the ADF. Position the first page of the original FACE DOWN, then close the ADF.
 - If Book Copy, Non-Image Area Erase, Size Auto Detect mode of Image Repeat, or Image Centering is selected, keep the ADF open throughout the scanning procedure.



Touch [1->2] on the Copy Screen to highlight it.

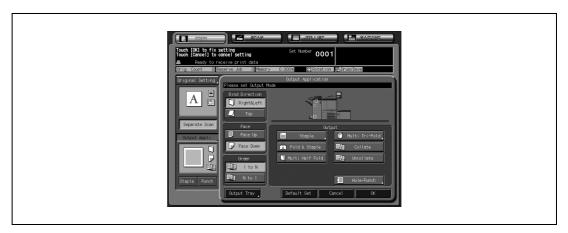


- The Separate Scan key will be automatically highlighted on the screen.
- DO NOT press [Reset] at this point, otherwise the Separate Scan mode will be released to disable
 the machine from scanning the original placed on the original glass.
- 3 Specify other conditions for making double-sided copies.
 - Selecting the original set direction:
 - (1) Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen to display the Original Setting Screen.
 - (2) Touch to highlight the original direction key according to the direction of the original placed on the original glass.
 - (3) Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.

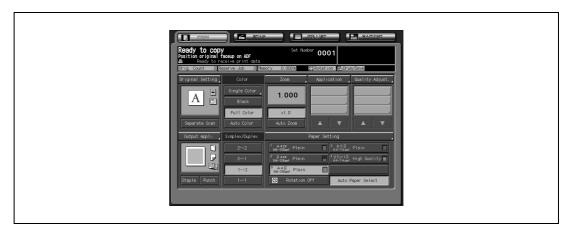


9-26 bizhub PRO C5501

- For details of original direction setting, see page 9-5.
- Selecting the binding direction of double-sided copies:
 - (1) Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen to display the Output Application Screen.
 - (2) Touch the desired binding direction key to highlight it. To make double-sided copies arranged upside down on the back pages, select [Top].
 - (3) Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.



- For details on specifying binding direction of double-sided copies, see page 12-5.
- 4 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
- 5 Press [Start] to scan.
 - The front side image of the double-sided copy will be scanned into memory.
- 6 Replace the original on the original glass with the back side image original, then press [Start].
- When all originals are scanned, touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.



8 Press [Start] to print.

All the data in memory will be output.



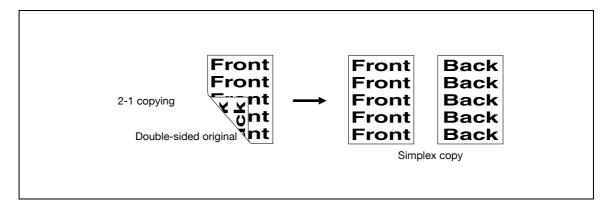


Detai

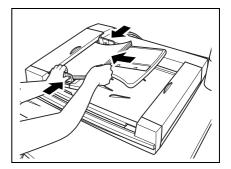
To delete the scanned data without printing, or to suspend the printing job, press [Stop]. For details, see page 8-17.

9.5.3 Making single-sided copies from double-sided originals

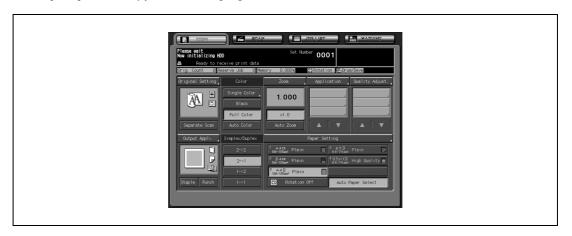
Use ADF and select [2->1] mode to make single-sided copies from double-sided originals.



- Specify the original direction on the Original Setting Screen according to that of the original loaded in the ADF.
- ✓ The normal single-sided copies (having the same edge as page top) can be made from double-sided originals printed upside down on the back pages.
- 1 Position the original in the ADF.

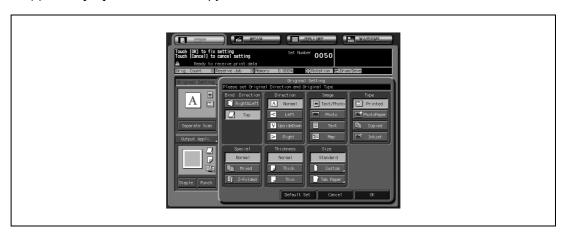


2 Touch [2->1] on the Copy Screen to highlight it.



9-28 bizhub PRO C5501

- Specify copy conditions for making copies from double-sided originals.
 - Selecting the original set direction and binding direction:
 - (1) Touch [Original Setting] on the Copy Screen to display the Original Setting Screen.
 - (2) Touch to highlight the original direction key according to the direction of the original loaded in the ADF.
 - (3) To make normal single-sided copies (having the same edge as page top) from double-sided originals printed upside down on the back pages, touch [Top] in the Bind Direction area to highlight it.
 - (4) Touch [OK] to return to the Copy Screen.



For details of original direction setting, see page 9-5.
 For details of original binding direction, see page 9-3.

9.6 Paper setting

Each paper tray has been preset with paper size and other specifications. The setting items are as follows:

- Paper Type
- Name
- Weight
- Both Sides Adjustment
- Speed Setting
- Hole-Punch
- Colored Paper
- Air Assist (Tray 4 of Large Capacity Unit LU-202 only)

Paper size

The machine can be set to detect the standard paper size when loaded or to accommodate a specific size (custom size or tabbed paper size).

The tray specified as Standard or Tab Paper allows Auto Paper Select, Auto Zoom, and Rotation to function. The tray specified as Custom cannot be used when these functions are activated.

Paper specifications

Using [Paper Setting] on the Copy Screen or Machine Status Screen, paper specifications preset for each tray can temporarily be altered, new specifications can be registered, and registered specifications can be recalled.

The following describes how to use Auto Paper Select, Auto Zoom, and Rotation functions, and how to change/register the paper size and other specifications for each tray as well as to recall registered specifications.

Improving monk on large-sized paper or feedability of small-sized thick paper in duplex printing

If printed image on large-sized paper shows unevenness, or small-sized thick paper has difficulty in feeding when duplex-printed, adjust fixing pressure of the fixing unit to make improvement on it.



Detail

The User Setting allows you to delete the registered paper specifications. It also gives efficiency in registering more than one sort of specifications. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

The following describes how to use Auto Paper Select, Auto Zoom, and Rotation functions, and how to temporarily change the paper size and other specifications registered for each tray as well as to recall preset specifications.

9-30 bizhub PRO C5501

C

9.6.1 Selecting paper size automatically: Auto paper select

Auto Paper Select detects the original size placed on the ADF or original glass and automatically selects and feeds copy paper of the same size (x1.0 magnification mode), or selects an appropriate size according to the magnification ratio selected (Zoom mode).



Detail

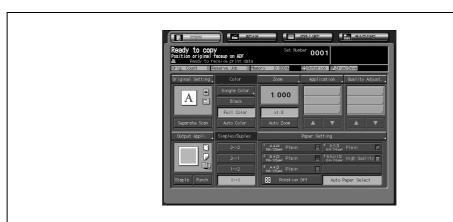
The original sizes to be detected from the ADF or original glass are previously determined. See page 3-9 for details.

The original sizes to be detected from the ADF or original glass can be changed. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

The machine manager can designate the tray or paper condition incompatible with Auto Paper Select. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

The machine can be set to deactivate Auto Paper Select when original is set in the ADF or on the original glass.

- ✓ Auto Paper Select is incompatible with Auto Zoom, while Rotation is available.
- ✓ Auto Paper Select will not select the tray of the size specified as Custom.
- Press [Reset] on the control panel. If the machine is equipped with the ADF, close it securely before pressing [Reset].
 - [Auto Paper Select] is initially selected on the Copy Screen.



2 Position the original.

The tray loaded with an appropriate paper size will be selected automatically.
 Or, a message will be prompt you that the appropriate size cannot be found in any tray. In this case, load the paper of the size referred in the message.



Reminder

Auto Paper Select may not function for the tray of selected size due to the paper specifications registered for that tray.

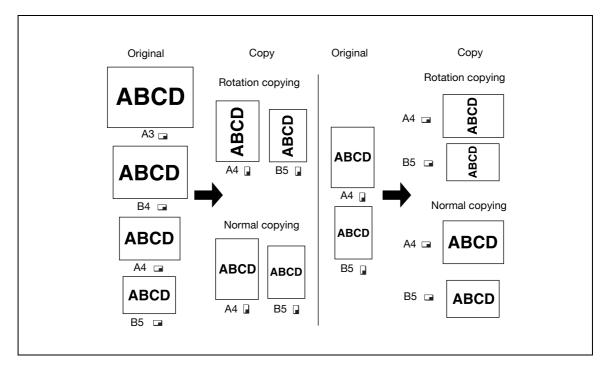
9.6.2 Turning on/off the rotation

This function allows you to utilize Auto Paper Select or Auto Zoom and copy the original documents onto size A4 or B5, irrespective of the copy paper feeding direction.



Detail

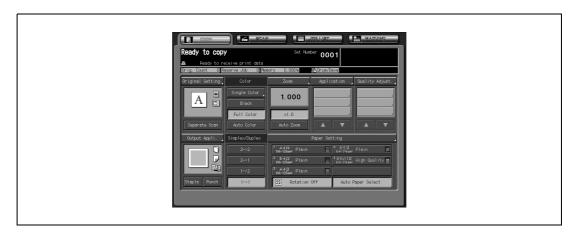
The machine can be set to change the timing to operate this function. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.



The copier is initially set to activate the Rotation function automatically. Follow the procedure below to release/resume this function.

- ✓ Copy paper sizes: A4 □/□, B5 □/□
- ✓ Original sizes: A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, B5 ¬/¬
- Touch [Rotation Off] on the Copy Screen to highlight it.

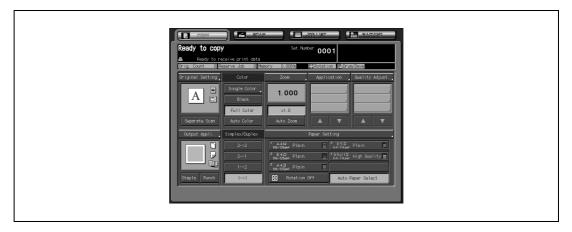
When Rotation is released, the Rotation icon on the Copy Screen will disappear to indicate that this function is cancelled.



9-32 bizhub PRO C5501

2 Touch to deselect [Rotation Off] to resume this function.

When Rotation is resumed, the Rotation icon will be displayed on the screen.



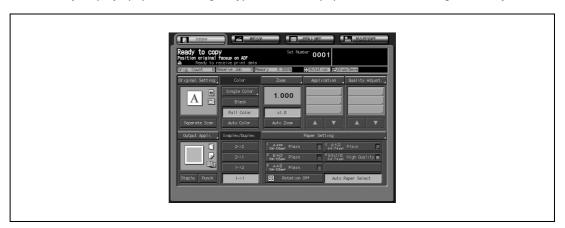
9.6.3 Using paper not specified to any tray: Paper setting

Each paper tray has been preset with paper size and other specifications.

If you want to use another paper than any loaded in the trays, follow the procedure below to temporarily change the setting of the tray to be used.

When starting a job after a setting change has been made in paper type (e.g. from Normal to Coated-GL), it may take a certain period of time before copying operation becomes available due to the fixing temperature adjustment.

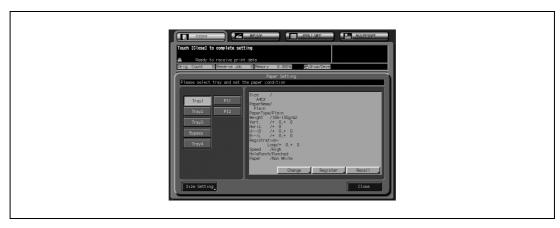
- 1 On the Copy Screen, check the tray setting for each tray.
 - Each key displays paper size, weight, type/name, and paper amount remaining in the tray.



- The paper name will be displayed only when the same paper size as that in registered specifications is loaded.
- 2 Load copy paper into the tray with the setting change made.
 - The changed setting will not be cleared when copying job is completed using that tray.
- 3 Touch [Paper Setting].

The Paper Setting Screen will be displayed.

- 4 Select the tray to change the setting temporarily.
 - Touch the desired tray key in the left side area of the screen.



- 5 Change the setting of paper specifications.
 - Change the paper specifications of the tray either by selecting the one previously registered or by programming a new setting.
 - To recall a setting:
 - (1) Touch [Recall].
 - (2) Use [Next] or [Previous] to scroll the list to the desired Paper Type key, then touch the key to highlight it.
 - (3) Touch [OK] to return to the Paper Setting Screen.

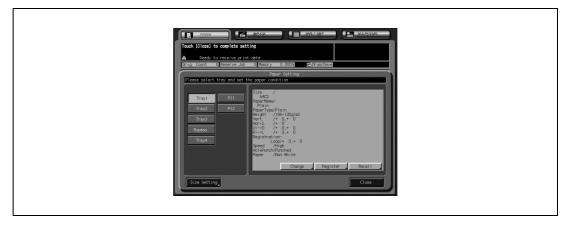


- (4) Touch [Size Setting] to specify the paper size. For setting procedure, see step 6.
- (5) Touch [OK] to return to the Paper Setting Screen.

9-34 bizhub PRO C5501

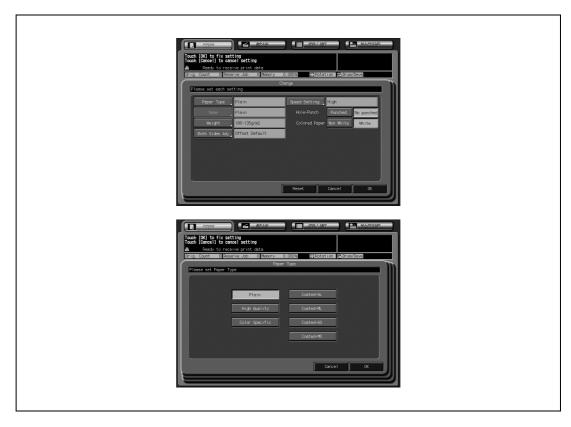
9

To program a new setting: (1) Touch [Change].



In this case, the paper name cannot be changed.

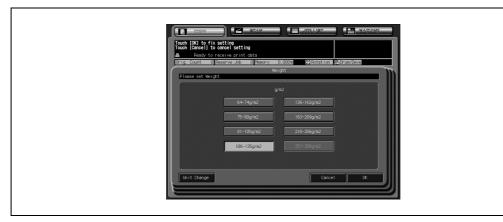
(2) Touch [Paper Type], then select the desired paper type. Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



The tray 4 exclusively allow the selection of four types of coated paper.

(3) Touch [Weight]. Touch the desired paper weight key to highlight it. Use [Unit Change] to select the desired unit of the paper weight.

Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

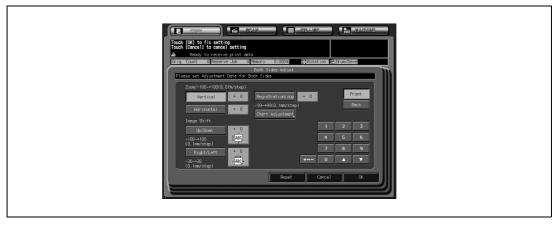


Bypass tray and the tray 4 of Large capacity unit LU-202 exclusively allow the selection of $257-300 \text{ g/m}^2$.

(4) Touch [Both Sides].

Touch [Front] or [Back] to select the printed side, select the adjustment item (vertical zoom, horizontal zoom, vertical shift, horizontal shift, or registration loop), and then touch [+<-->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative. Use the screen keypad or arrow keys $[\blacktriangledown]$ and $[\blacktriangle]$ to enter the desired adjustment value.

Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Reset] to clear the setting.



(5) Touch [Speed Setting]. Select the desired speed key, then touch [OK].



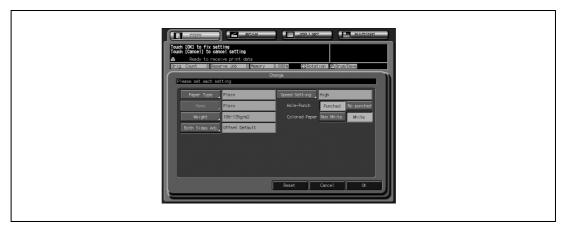
This setting is unavailable if paper weight is specified as 106-135 g/m².

9-36 bizhub PRO C5501

9

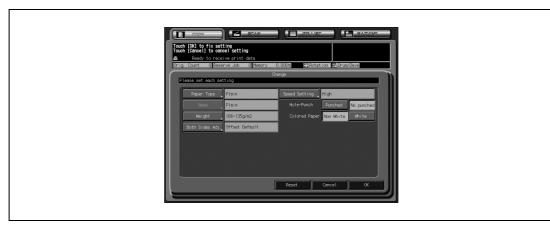
(6) Make a selection for Hole-Punch.

Touch [Punched] if the paper has punch holes, or touch [No Punched] if not, then touch [OK].

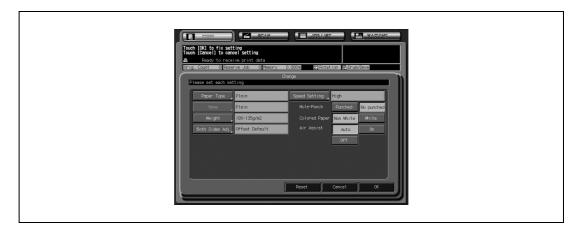


(7) Make a selection for Colored Paper.

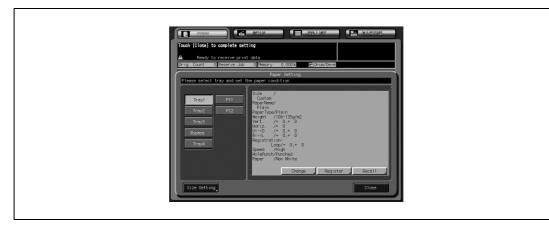
Touch [Non White] when using colored paper, or touch [White] for white paper.



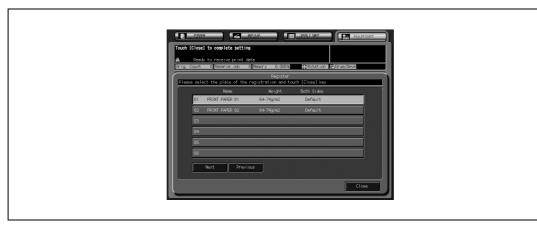
(8) Make a selection for Air Assist (only if tray 4 is selected). Touch [Auto] For automatic activation, [On] for compulsory activation, or [Off] for deactivation.



(9) Touch [OK] to return to the Paper Setting Screen with the new specifications displayed.



- To register a setting:
 - (1) Perform steps (1) to (8) of the procedure for programming a new setting.
 - (2) Touch [Register] to display the Register Paper Setting Screen.



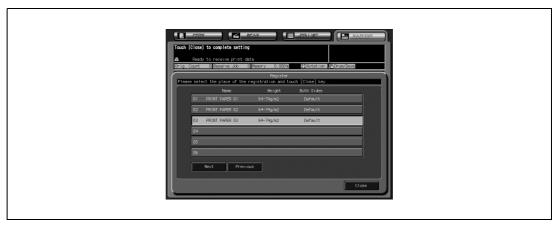
(3) Use [Next] or [Previous] to scroll the list to the key to be registered with a new setting, then touch it to highlight it.

Selecting a key having a name already displayed will overwrite and clear the existing data.

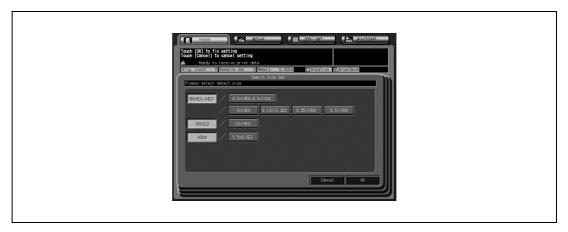


9-38 bizhub PRO C5501

The Name Input Screen will be displayed.



- (4) Enter the desired name, then touch [OK] to return to the Register Paper Setting Screen.
- (5) Touch [Close] to return to the Paper Setting Screen.
- 6 Change the paper size temporarily.
 - Select one of the following three options:
 Standard, Custom, Tab Paper
 - To set the desired standard size:
 (1) Touch [Size Setting], then touch [Standard] to highlight it.
 The tray can be set to detect some specific standard sizes, if desired.
 Touch [Search Size Set], select the desired size to highlight it, then touch [OK].

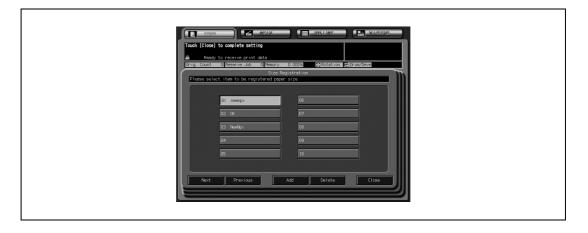


(2) Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

- To set the desired custom size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Setting], then touch [Custom].
 - (2) Select the lengthwise/widthwise dimension key to highlight it, then use [▲], [▼], or touch screen keypad to enter the desired special size.
 - Entered size should fall within 140 330 mm in lengthwise dimension, 182 487 mm in widthwise dimension.
 - (3) Touch [Lead Edge], [Rear Edge], or [Center] to specify the desired image position.
 - (4) Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Paper Setting Screen.
 - Touching [Fix] will complete the setting and directly return to the Copy Screen.



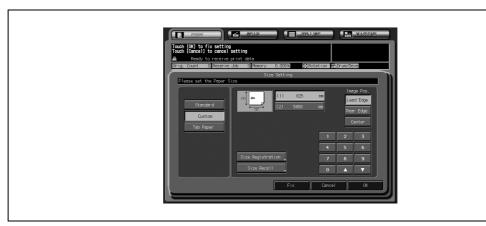
- To register the desired custom size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Setting], then touch [Custom].
 - (2) Select the lengthwise/widthwise dimension key to highlight it, then use [▲], [▼], or touch screen keypad to enter the desired special size.
 - Entered size should fall within 140 330 mm in lengthwise dimension, 182 487 mm in widthwise dimension.
 - (3) Touch [Lead Edge], [Rear Edge], or [Center] to specify the desired image position.
 - (4) Touch [Size Registration] to display the Size Registration Screen.
 - (5) Touch the desired number key to highlight it, using [Next] and [Previous] as needed. Select the key with a name displayed to overwrite the size and name registered for that key.
 - (6) Touch [Add] to display the Input Custom Size Name Screen. Touching [Delete] will display a popup menu to confirm the data deletion. Touch [Yes] to delete the data registered for that key.



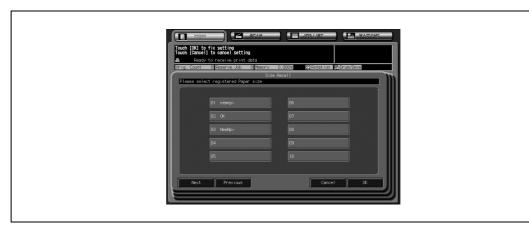
9-40 bizhub PRO C5501

- 9
- (7) Enter the desired name, then touch [OK] to return to the previous screen.
- (8) Touch [Close] to restore the Size Setting Screen.
- (9) Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Paper Setting Screen.

Touching [Fix] will complete the setting and directly return to the Copy Screen.



- To recall a registered custom size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Setting], then touch [Custom].
 - (2) Touch [Size Recall] to display the Size Recall Screen.
 - (3) Touch the desired number key to highlight it, using [Next] and [Previous] as needed.



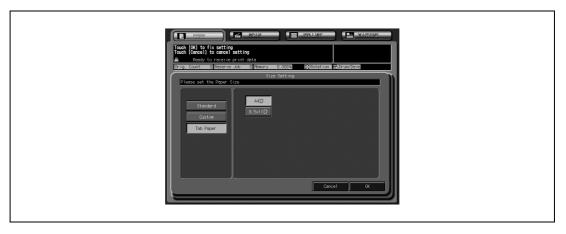
- (4) Touch [OK] to restore the Size Setting Screen with recalled size displayed.
- (5) Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Paper Setting Screen.

Touching [Fix] will complete the setting and directly return to the Copy Screen.

The smallest size of the custom size can be changed. Contact your service representative for details.

Use the [Size] key provided on the Machine Status Screen to display the actual dimensions specified for the tray loaded with custom paper size.

- To set a tabbed paper size:
 - (1) Touch [Size Setting], then touch [Tab Paper].
 - (2) Touch the desired tabbed paper size key to highlight it.
 - (3) Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



7 Touch [Close] on the Paper Setting Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the new paper specifications displayed on the specified tray key.



Note

To output a chart for the Both Sides Adjustment, follow the procedure below to set the adjustment value.



- (1) Touch [Front] on the Both Sides Adjustment Screen to select the printed side, then touch [Chart Adjustment].
- (2) Touch [COPY] tab to display the Copy Screen.
- (3) Press [Start] on the control panel to output a chart. Touch [Return] to restore the Chart Adjustment Screen.
- (4) Enter the adjustment data of the front side.

With Front selected:

Use a scale to measure. Enter the adjustment value from the screen keypad. Setting range: 0.0 to 999.9

- (5) Touch [Adjustment Start].
- (6) Repeat steps (2) to (5) until the desired result is obtained. Touch [Close] to complete the front side setting.
- (7) Similarly, touch [Back] and repeat the chart adjustment, if desired.

9-42 bizhub PRO C5501

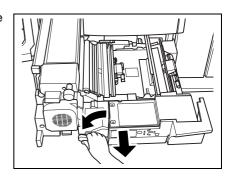
Ç

9.6.4 Improving unevenness on large-sized paper or feedability of small-sized thick paper in duplex printing

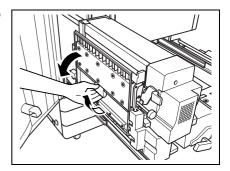
If printed image on large-sized paper shows unevenness, lowering the fixing pressure of the fixing unit may normalize the image. Reversely, if small-sized thick paper has difficulty in feeding when duplex-printed, adding fixing pressure of the fixing unit may improve the feedability.

Follow the procedure below to adjust the fixing pressure of the fixing unit.

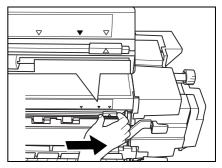
- 1 Open the front door of the main body.
- 2 Turn the fixing conveyance unit lever leftward to withdraw the conveyance fixing unit.



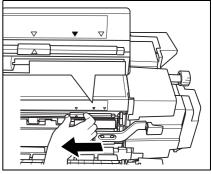
Holding the handle on the left side of the fixing unit, push it up to open the left side cover of the fixing unit.



- 4 Move the fixing pressure adjustment knob.
 - Slide the knob rightward to align the arrow mark on the lever with the one on the right side, if printed image on large-sized paper shows unevenness.

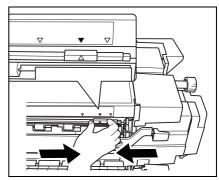


 Slide the knob leftward to align the arrow mark on the lever with the one on the left side, if small-sized thick paper has difficulty in feeding when duplex-printed.



5 Close the left side cover of the fixing unit, return the fixing conveyance unit to its original position, then close the front door of the main body.

- 6 Operate the copying/printing job.
 - The fixing pressure adjustment knob should not be moved unless the copy/print result requires the adjustment. When copying/printing is completed with the knob moved, be sure to return it to the original position where the arrow mark on the knob meets that in the middle.



↑ CAUTION

The internal fixing unit is very hot.

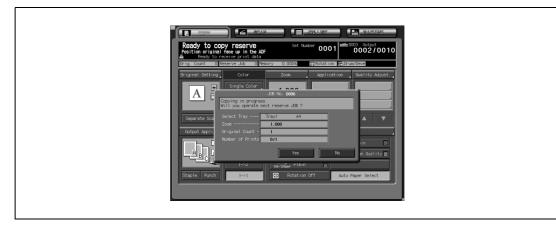
To avoid getting burned, DO NOT TOUCH.

9.7 Setting reserve job

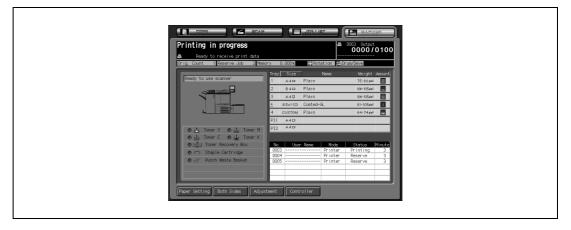
The Reserve function allows you to set up a new job while a current job is in process. When the current job is finished, the reserve job starts printing immediately.

Service can set the machine to disable this function. Contact your service representative, if desired.

- ✓ Job settings: Max. 100
- The reserve job setting will be available after the copier starts to scan the current job, and also available anytime while printing the current job.
- 1 Display the Copy Screen with the message "Ready to set reserve job" displayed in the message area.
 - When scanning job is started:
 The following popup menu will be displayed.
 Touch [Yes] to set reserve job. The Copy Screen for setting reserve job will be displayed.



- Touching [No] will return to the Machine Status Screen. In this case, touching [COPY] tab will display
 the Copy Screen and allows you to make the reserve job setting.
 If the machine is initially set to display the Copy Screen after scanning job is started, the above
 popup menu will provide only the [Close] key. Touching [Close] will also display the Copy Screen to
 make the reserve job setting.
- While printing job is in progress:
 The message "Printing in progress" is displayed in the message area of the Machine Status Screen.
 Touch [COPY] tab to display the Copy Screen with the message "Ready to set reserve Job".



- 2 Select copy conditions for the reserve job as desired, position original(s), then press [Start].
 - Repeat steps 1 and 2. Up to 100 reserve jobs can be entered.
 - To check and operate the reserve jobs, touch [JOB LIST] tab to display the Job List Screen. See page 14-3 for details.



Detail

If any trouble occurs on a reserve job, see page 5-7.

9.8 Copy conditions incompatible with basic job settings

				Г										В	as	ic									_	
																							inal	Se	ttin	g
																					Bi Dire	ind ction		ire	otio	n
С	opy	y Conditio Bas	ns Incompatible with ic Settings					Using Original Glass	Using ADF	Separate Scan	Full Color	ck	Single Color	Gray Scale	Auto Color		S	1.000 Magnification	E	Rotation	Right & Left Binding	Upper Binding	Normal		UpsideDown	ht
				-	1>2	2>1	2>2	Usi	Usi	Sep	lnЯ	Black	Sin	Gra	Aut	SdV	SMA	0.	Zoom	Rot	Rig	ldn	ΙOΝ	Left	ď	Right
	1>			ackslash	*	*	*							С												
	1>			*	ackslash	*	*	*2	L	L			L	С												
	2>			*	*	ackslash	*	*2		L				С												
	2>;			*	*	*	ackslash	*2						С												
		ing Origina	l Glass		*1	0	0	\triangle	*					С												
		ing ADF		┖	┖	L	┖	*	\triangle	L			L	С				L			Ш				\perp	
		parate Sca	n	L	L	L	L	┖	L	riangle			L	С				L			Ш					
	_	l Color		L		L				L	\geq	*	*	С							Ш				ш	
	Bla			L	L	L	L		L	L	*	7	*	С	*			L			$ldsymbol{\sqcup}$				\vdash	
	_	gle Color		┖	С	L	L	╙	L	oxdot	*	*	ightharpoons	C	*	L	_	╙	_		Ш			Ш	ш	
		Aray Scale				L	С	╙	L	oxdot	*	*	*	\leq	O)	О	О	╙			Ш			Ш	ш	
				L		L				L	*	*	*	С	\geq						Ш				ш	
		APS				L	L		_	$ldsymbol{f eta}$			L	С		\geq	*	╙	_		Ш			Ш	ш	
	ΑN			┖	┖	L	┖	_	_	oxdot			L	С		*	\geq	*	*		Ш			Ш	ш	
		00 Magnifi	cation	┖					_	L			L	С			*	Ŋ	*		Ш				\perp	
	Zo			L					_	L			L	С			*	*	\geq	L	Ш					
	Ro	tation	I=	┖	L	L	L		_	$ldsymbol{ldsymbol{ldsymbol{eta}}}$			L	С				╙		hi				Ш	ш	
		Bind Direction	Right & Left Binding	┖	L	L	┖	<u> </u>	_	oxdot			L	С				╙	_		\triangle	*		Ш	ш	
		Direction	Upper Binding	┖	_		L		_	L			L	С				╙			*	\triangle			\perp	
			Normal	┖					_	L			L	С				_			Ш		$^{\prime}$			
		Direction	Left	_	┖	┖	_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	Ш			Ш	С				_			Ш			\searrow	*	*
			UpsideDown	╙	┕	L	L	╙	<u> </u>	L			L	С				╙			Ш			*		*
		Image	Right	┖	L		L	<u> </u>	_	L			L	С				╙			Ш			*	*	Δ
.0			Text/Photo	┖	_	L	L		_	L			L	С				_			Ш				\vdash	
Basic			Photo	┡	L	L	L	_	<u> </u>	L			L	С				<u> </u>			Ш				\vdash	
l _m			Text	╙	┕	L	L	╙	╙	L			L	С				╙			Ш				\perp	
	D D		Map	┡	L	L	L	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	\vdash		_	_	C				L			Ш				\vdash	
	[≣		Printed	L	_	L	L		_	L		Ω	D	С				_			Ш				ш	
	<u> </u>	Туре	Photo Paper	┡	┡	L	⊢	┡	<u> </u>	\vdash		ا ۵	0 (0				┡		L	Ш				\vdash	
	ji.		Copied	┡	┡	L	┡	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	\vdash			О	C				┡			Ш				\vdash	
	Original Setting		Inkjet	L		L		L	_	L	Щ	D	Д	С	Щ	H		<u> </u>		_	L		_	L	Н	_
	ľ	0	Normal	\vdash	L	L	L	L	\vdash	\vdash	Н		\vdash	С	Н	Н		\vdash	_	<u></u>	\vdash	L	<u> </u>	H	Н	L
		Special	Mixed Original	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	1.0.	\vdash	\vdash	H		\vdash	0	H	\vdash		\vdash	-	*3	\vdash	_	<u> </u>	H	\vdash	<u> </u>
			Z-Fold Original	L	L	L	L	*	\vdash	\vdash	H		\vdash	C	H	\vdash	H	\vdash		<u> </u>	\vdash	_	_	H	\vdash	
		Thickness	Normal	L	L	L	H	H	\vdash	\vdash	Н		H	С	Н	Н	Н	\vdash			H	-	-	H	Н	
		riickness	Thin	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	_	\vdash	C	Н	\vdash	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	H	\vdash	\vdash
				\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	_	\vdash	C	Н	\vdash	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	H	\vdash	\vdash
			Standard	L	L	⊢	L		\vdash	\vdash	H		\vdash		H	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash		\vdash	\vdash	_	_	H	\vdash	
		Size	Custom Size	⊢	\vdash	\vdash	H	H	\vdash	\vdash	Н	_	H	С	Н	H		⊢	-	-	H	H	<u> </u>	H	Н	-
			Custom Size (Full Area)	\vdash	\vdash	L	Ļ	\vdash	ļ.	\vdash	Ļ		Ļ	0	Ļ	0	0	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	-	<u> </u>		\vdash	<u> </u>
	\vdash	Aft D:	Tab Paper	*0	*9	0		F	≜	F	0	Е	O	C	<u>О</u> ш	0	OL	F	E	F	E	F	F	F	F	F
		After Proo		1.9	<u> </u>	*9	1.9	ᄩ	ᄩ	E	느	E	ᄩ	C	느	0	E	ᄩ	냳	۴	ᄩ	느	ш	E	E	E
			can (during scanning) opy (When Current comp.)	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	-	\vdash	C	Н	Н	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	냗		트	⊢
	۸ ا		opy (when Current comp.) opy (Stop Immediately)	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	_	\vdash	C	Н	Н	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	\vdash	\vdash
	Others	IP Scanne		\vdash	c	\vdash	c	\vdash	\vdash	Н	Н		Н	Ť	С	С	С	\vdash	\vdash	С	Н	Н	\vdash	Н	Н	\vdash
	₹	Reserve J		Т	Ť	Т	Ť	T	H	Н	П		Н	С	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	H	\vdash	ŕ	Н	Т		П	П	
		Without ADF			Г	0	0	Γ		П	П		П	С	П	П	П	Г			П	П		П	П	
		Coin Vendor (parallel)						*18		Г			П	С	0			Г			П				П	
		Coin Vendo											С													

9-46 bizhub PRO C5501

9

											Origi	inal	100		Ва	sic	;							O+1	ers		
				\vdash	Im	age			Tv	ре	лg				rg Thi	ckr	220		Q:	ize		\vdash		_	ers		
					IIII	age	Ţ		Т	ре	Γ	0	Dec	lai	11111	CKII	ess		SI	ze			ning)	nt comp.	diately)		
С	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Basic Settings						Map	Printed	Photo Paper	Copied	Inkjet	Normal	Mixed Original	Z-Fold Original	Normal	Thick	Thin	Standard	Custom Size	Custom Size (Full Area)	Tab Paper	After Proof Copy	Separate Scan (during scanning)	Interrupt Copy (When Current comp.)	Interrupt Copy (Stop Immediately)	IP Scanner	Reserve Job
	1>1																										
	1>2																	Ш									
	2>																				*14						
	2>2					$ldsymbol{ld}}}}}}$		Ш			Ш	_			Ш			Ш			*14						
		ing Origina	l Glass									_		*12				Ш									
		ing ADF				_						_		_				Ш			A						
		parate Sca	n		_	_	L	L	_	_	L	_	_	_	L		L	Н		_		_					
		l Color		L		\vdash	L		_	_		\vdash	\vdash		H		H	Ц		\vdash	*	_		L			L
	Bla				_	_		0	0	0	0	_		_				Ш			L.						
		gle Color		_	_	_	_	0	0	0	0	_	_	_	\vdash	H	H	Н		_	*	_		_	H		_
		ay Scale		С	C	С	С	С	С	С	С	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	H		H	Н		С	40.	_		H	H		С
		to Color				_						<u> </u>		_	Н			Н			*	_					
	AP				_	_						_		_				Н		*	*						
	AM				\vdash	\vdash		H	_	_	Н	⊢	\vdash	\vdash				Н		*	*	_		H			H
1 }		00 Magnifi	cation		\vdash	\vdash		Н	_		Н	⊢		\vdash	Н			Н				H					
	Zoo	tation			_	⊢		\vdash		_		_	*3	_	Н			Н	D	D		_					
1 1	nu		Right & Left Binding	Н	\vdash	\vdash	Н	Н	_	\vdash	Н	⊢	3	\vdash	Н		Н	Н	U	۲	\vdash	_	_	H		_	H
		Bind Direction	Upper Binding		\vdash	\vdash		Н	_		Н	\vdash		\vdash	Н			Н				H					
		Direction	Normal	Н	\vdash	\vdash	Н	Н	_	\vdash	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н		Н	Н		\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	_	Н			Н
		Direction	Left	Н	\vdash	\vdash		Н	_	\vdash	Н	\vdash		\vdash	Н			Н		\vdash	\vdash	\vdash		\vdash			\vdash
			UpsideDown	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	Н	_	\vdash	Н	\vdash		\vdash	Н		Н	Н		\vdash	\vdash	\vdash		H	Н		\vdash
			Right	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash		Н		\vdash	Н	\vdash		\vdash	Н			Н		\vdash	\vdash	_					\vdash
			Text/Photo		*	*	*	Н	_	\vdash	Н	\vdash		\vdash	Н		Н	Н		\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	_	\vdash	Н	_	\vdash
<u>اي</u> .			Photo	*	<u></u>	*	*		_			\vdash		\vdash				Н				_		\vdash			\vdash
Basic		Image	Text	*	*	<u> </u>	*		_	\vdash		\vdash		\vdash				Н		\vdash		\vdash		\vdash			\vdash
18	_		Map	*	*	*				\vdash		\vdash		\vdash				Н		\vdash		\vdash		\vdash			\vdash
	Original Setting		Printed	-	-	-			*	*	*	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н		Н	Н		\vdash	D	Н		Н			Н
	Set		Photo Paper			\vdash		*	Ċ	*	*	\vdash						Н			D	_		Н			Н
	a	Type	Copied	Н	\vdash	\vdash		*	*	K	*	\vdash		\vdash	Н			Н		\vdash	D	\vdash		Н	Н		Н
	igi		Inkjet					*	*	*	Ċ	\vdash						Н			D			Н			Н
	ŏ		Normal		\vdash	\vdash		Ė	Ė	Ė		$\overline{}$	*	*			Н	Н			Ė			Т			Т
		Special	Mixed Original		\vdash	\vdash				\vdash		*	Ż	*				Н	$\overline{\cap}$	0	0			\vdash			\vdash
			Z-Fold Original		\vdash	\vdash	Н	Н	Т	Т	Н	*	*	Ċ	Н		Н	П	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	Т		Т			Т
			Normal											\vdash		*	*	П	Ŭ	Ŭ	Ŭ						
		Thickness										\vdash			*	\vee	*	П						Т			Т
			Thin												*	*	$\overline{}$	П									
			Standard															abla	*	*	*			Т			
		0:	Custom Size	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г		Г	П	Г	0	0	П		П	*	abla	*	*						
		Size	Custom Size (Full Area)	Г	Г		Г	Г		Г	Г		ō	ō	Г		П	*	*		*						
			Tab Paper	Г	Г		Г	0	0	0	0	Г	ō	ŏ	Г		Г	*	*	*	\setminus			Г			Г
		After Proo		Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ē	Ē	Ē	Ē	Ε	Ē	Ē	Ε	Е	Ε	Е	Ε	Ε	E	\angle					
			can (during scanning)	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Е	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Ε	Γ,	\angle				
			opy (When Current comp.)																			0		/	С	0	0
	ဖွ		opy (Stop Immediately)				Г	Г			П		0	0	П		П	П				0		C	\vee	0	Ō
	the	IP Scanne	r	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0									0		С		С	C		С
	ō	Reserve J																									
	Without ADF													0													
			or (parallel)										0	0										0	0		0
		Coin Vendo																					0	0		0	

15-1					Е	Bas	ic				C	olo	or A	ιdjι	ıstr	ner	nt					Α	pp	lica	tioi		
1>1 1 C C C C C C C C					0	the	rs																File	e Ed	tit		
1-22 C C C C C C C C C	С	op	y Conditio Basi	ns Incompatible with c Settings		Coin Vendor (parallel)	Coin Vendor (serial/card management)	Copy Density	Adjust Background	B-Side Prevent	RGB Adjustment	Hue	Saturation	Brightness	Screen	Sharpness	Contrast	Distinction	Color Balance	Glossy	Insert Sheet	Cover Sheet (PI)	Chapter	Chapter (Print Insertion)	Combine Originals		Insert Image
2>1						С						Ш											*8	*8		*8	ш
2-2 Using Original Glass												Ш			Ш		_										
Using Original Glass												Ш			Ш		<u> </u>						*8	*8	_	*8	
Separate Scan												L					_								L.		
Separate Scan											Ш			\vdash		<u> </u>				*12		*12	*12	*1	*1	*12	
Full Color	1							Щ	Ш		<u> </u>	\vdash	_	<u> </u>	\vdash	Ш	<u> </u>	_	_	_	\vdash		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	닏	\vdash
Single Color		Full Color Black Single Color Gray Scale		n				Ш	Ш	Щ	_	Ш	_	_	\vdash	Ш	\vdash	_		_	\vdash	_	_	_	В	В	ш
Single Color								ш	Ш	Щ	<u> </u>	L	L	L.	\vdash	Ш	\vdash	_	L	<u> </u>	\vdash	_	<u> </u>	_	⊢	Ш	ш
Gray Scale									Ш			_			╙	Ш	_				╙			_	<u> </u>	Ш	\vdash
APS						С		Ш	Ш	Ш	_				oxdot	Ш	$ldsymbol{ldsymbol{ldsymbol{eta}}}$			Ш	oxdot		_	$oxed{oxed}$	$ldsymbol{ldsymbol{ldsymbol{eta}}}$	Ш	ш
APS						С		*5				С	С	С	C		_	С	О	О	С	С	О	C			С
AMS		Au	to Color			С																					
Normal C C C C C C C C C						С														*	*			*	*	*	
Normal C C C C C C C C C						С																		L		Ш	ш
Rotation		1.0	000 Magnifi	cation																							
Bind Direction Direction		Zo	om		С		С																				
Direction Upper Binding		Ro	tation			С																			*	*	
Normal				Right & Left Binding		С																					
Direction Left			Direction	Upper Binding																							
Direction			Direction	Normal																							
Continue																											
Text/Photo																											
Image				Right	С		С																				
Map	l			Text/Photo	С	С	С																				П
Map	l-S		Imago	Photo	С	С	С																	Г			П
Map	Ä		image	Text	С	С	С					П			0												П
Printed	-	ص ا		Мар	С	С	С								0												П
Normal		Setting		Printed	С	С	С					П			П									Г			П
Normal				Photo Paper	С	С	С					Г			Г									Г		П	П
Normal		<u>a</u>	туре		С	С	С					Г			Г									Г		П	П
Normal		Origina		Inkjet	С	С	С					Г			П									Г		П	П
Z-Fold Original				Normal	С	С	С																				П
Normal			Special	Mixed Original	С	С	С					П									0		0	0	0	0	0
Thickness Thick				Z-Fold Original	С	С	С					Г			Г									Г		П	П
Thickness Thick				Normal	С	С	С					Г			Г									Г		П	П
Standard			Thickness		С																					П	П
Standard				Thin	С	С	С					Г			Г		Г				Г			Т		П	Г
Size Custom Size C C C C C C C C C				Standard	С							Г			Г						П			Г		П	П
Size Custom Size (Full Area) C C C C C C C C C		l						П	П	П		П			Т	П	Т				Т			Т	Т	П	\Box
Tab Paper	1	l	Size					П	П	П		Г			Т	П	Т				Т			Т	0	ਨੀ	\Box
After Proof Copy	1	l	1					П	П	П		П	Т		Т	П					0		0	0			0
Separate Scan (during scanning)		\vdash	After Proo					E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	Е	E	E	E	E		E					
Interrupt Copy (When Current comp.)	1	Separate Scan (duri			Ť	Ť	Ť	Ť	Ħ	П	Ē	Ť	Ē	Ē		m	Ē	Ē		Ē							
Interrupt Copy (Stop Immediately)	1	l			С	С	С	Н	Н	П	Н	Т	Н		ŕ	П	Н	Н		Н	ŕ		ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	Ħ	ŕ
IP Scanner		ري ا						Н	Н	Н		Н	Н		Н	Н	\vdash	Н		H	\vdash			\vdash	\vdash	Н	\vdash
Without ADF		je l	IP Scanne	r				*5	Н	Н		С	С	С	c	Н	\vdash	С	С	С	c		С	С	С	c	c
Without ADF	1	ਰੋ						Ť	Н	П	Н	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	Н	Н	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	ŕ	Ť	ŕ	H	ŕ
Coin Vendor (parallel)	1	l			Ń			Н	Н	П		т			Т	Н	Т				Т	Т		т	Т	Н	М
		l			टि	ĸ			Н	Н		Н		Н	Н	Н	Н	Н			Н			Н	H	Н	Г
	1				С	c	Ć	Н	Н	П	Н	т	Н	Н	Т	Н	Н	Н		Н	Н		Н	Н	Т	Н	г

9-48 bizhub PRO C5501

9

				File	Edit						Аp	plic		on nag	e Ec	dit							A	O	utp lica	ut itio	n
Сор	y Conditio Basi	2				Multi-Page Enlargement	Non-Image Area Erase	Image Centering	Neg-/ Positive Reverse	Page Margin (Shift)	Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	Image Repeat	Image Repeat (Auto)	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	Frame Erasure	Center Erase	Stamp	Watermark	Copy Protect	Image Overlay	Program Overlay	Storing an Overlay Image	Face Up	Face Down	1toN	Nto1	Collated
1>					С	_		Ш										\vdash			\vdash			_			L
				_	C	*2								_	Ш			Н			Н			<u> </u>			L
2>				_	С	*2	*11			_		*2	*2	_	Ш			L			L			┡			⊢
2>		101			С	*2	*11	*11		_		*2	*2	_				H			H			┝			L
	sing Origina	Glass		-	С	+0	*44	*44	_		-	*2	*2	⊢	Н			H	_	_	Н	_		⊢	-		⊢
	sing ADF	n	\vdash	\vdash	С	*2	*11	*11 B	\vdash	\vdash	Н	⊣	Ľ	\vdash	Н		Н	\vdash	\vdash	_	\vdash	\vdash	_	\vdash	Н		\vdash
	eparate Sca	П	<u> </u>	\vdash	<u> </u>	\vdash	В	R	-	├-	Н	-	<u> </u>	\vdash	Н		Н	\vdash	_	Α	\vdash	_		\vdash	Н		⊢
	III Color		-	\vdash	C	\vdash	<u> </u>	\vdash	_	\vdash	Н	_	<u> </u>	\vdash	Н	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	_	<u> </u>	\vdash	_	_	\vdash	Н		\vdash
	ack		-	\vdash	С	\vdash	<u> </u>	\vdash	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	Н	—	<u> </u>	\vdash	Н	Щ	ш	\vdash	_	<u> </u>	\vdash	_		\vdash	Н		⊢
	ngle Color		_	<u>_</u>	0	<u>_</u>	١	١	Ļ	<u>_</u>	Ļ	Ļ	Ļ	١	ليا		Ļ		_	Ļ		Ļ	_	١	Ш		Ļ
	ay Scale		С	С	С	С	О	С	О	С	О	О	О	С	Ш	C	О	C		0	С	О	О	С	Ш		С
	ito Color				С	_		Ш						╙	Ш			Ш	*13	*13	*13			<u> </u>			L
	PS		*	_	С	*	*	*			*	*	*	*	Ш			Ш			Ш			L			L
	ИS		*		С	*		*		L		*	*	*				Ш			Ш			L			L
	000 Magnifi	cation			С						*			L										L			L
	om				С						*													L			L
R	otation				С																						L
	Bind	Right & Left Binding			С																						
	Direction	Upper Binding			С																						
		Normal			С																						Г
	Direction	Left			С																						Г
	Direction	UpsideDown			С			Г						Г										Г			
		Right			С			Г						Г				Г			П			Г			Г
		Text/Photo			С			Г										П			П			Г			T
3	l.	Photo		T	С			Г						Т				П	0		П			Т			T
Dasic	Image	Text		T	C			Н			Т			\vdash				Н	Ť		Н			\vdash			T
- 1	,	Мар		T	C			Н						H				H			H			\vdash			H
Ĭij	1	Printed		\vdash	c	\vdash		Н						Н				Н			Н			\vdash			H
Set		Photo Paper			Ċ			Н										Н			Н			Н			t
Original Setting	Туре	Copied			С	\vdash		Н			Н			Н	H		H	Н			Н			\vdash	H		H
l i	,	Inkjet		\vdash	c	\vdash	-	\vdash	H	\vdash	Н	H	\vdash	\vdash	Н	\vdash	Н	\vdash	H	H	\vdash	H		\vdash	Н		H
Ö	H	Normal	\vdash	\vdash	C	\vdash	-	\vdash	H	\vdash	H	H	\vdash	\vdash	Н	H	Н	\vdash	H	H	\vdash	H	-	\vdash	Н	H	H
1	Special	Mixed Original	0	0	С	0	0	0	\vdash	\vdash	0	0	0	0	Н	H	Н	\vdash	0	0	\vdash	H	-	\vdash	Н	H	H
	Special	Z-Fold Original	۲	۲	C	0	$\frac{9}{6}$	8	H	\vdash	Н	$\frac{9}{6}$		8	Н	\vdash	Н	\vdash	۲	Н	\vdash	H		\vdash	Н		\vdash
	-	Normal	\vdash	\vdash	С	۲	۲	۲	\vdash	\vdash	H	۲	$^{\circ}$	۲	Н	\vdash	Н	\vdash	H	\vdash	\vdash	H		\vdash	Н	H	H
	Thio!mas -		<u> </u>	\vdash	С	\vdash	-	\vdash	H	\vdash	H	H	-	\vdash	Н	H	Н	\vdash	H	-	\vdash	H		\vdash	Н		⊦
	Thickness	Thick	-	\vdash	C	\vdash	-	\vdash	-	\vdash	Н	-	-	\vdash	Н		Н	\vdash	-	-	\vdash		-	\vdash	Н		⊬
	—	Thin		\vdash		\vdash	-	\vdash	-	\vdash	Н	-	-	\vdash	Н		\vdash	\vdash	-	-	\vdash	\vdash	-	\vdash	Н		⊢
	1	Standard	-	\vdash	C	\vdash	-	\vdash		\vdash	Н		-	\vdash	Н		Н	\vdash	-	-	\vdash	-	-	\vdash	Н		⊢
	Size	Custom Size	_	L	C			\vdash	_		\vdash	_	_	_	Н		Н	\vdash	_	_	\vdash	_		\vdash	Н		⊢
	1	Custom Size (Full Area)		A	С	0	0	\vdash	_	0	2	_	L.	\vdash	Н		Н	\vdash	_	_	\vdash	_		\vdash	Н		⊢
\vdash	1.0 5	Tab Paper	ō	 	С	0	*	┝	F	F	닏	F	*	┝	닏	닏	H	┝	F	F	┝	_		\vdash	Н		\vdash
	After Proo		E	E	С	Е	ш	E	Е	Ε	ш	Е	ш	E	Е	Е	ш	E	Е	Е	E	_		<u> </u>			L
		can (during scanning)	Е	E	С	Е	ш	Е	Е	Е	Е	Е	ш	Е	Ш	П	Е	E	_	Е	Ε	_	-	_	Ш		L
		ppy (When Current comp.)		0	С	—	<u> </u>	\vdash	_	_	Ш	_	<u> </u>	_	Ш		Ш	Ш	_	_	Ш	_	0	0	Ш		L
5	Interrupt Co	py (Stop Immediately)		0	С	_		Ш		_	ш			$oxed{oxed}$	Ш		Ш	Ш			Ш			*17	Ш		*1
Others	IP Scanne		С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	С	O	С	С	О	О	О	С	\circ	Ш		(
10	11000110				С	_		$oxed{oxed}$		_				\Box	Ш		Ш	\Box			\Box			$ldsymbol{oxed}$	Ш		L
	Without Al				С	L		\Box		L				L							\Box			L			L
	Coin Vend	Coin Vendor (parallel)			С	Ĺ		L		Ĺ				L										L			Ĺ
	Coin Mondo	r (serial/card management)		Π	С	Γ																					Γ

					0	utp	ut .	App	olic	atio	on	\neg
С	ору		ns Incompatible with c Settings	Uncollated	Collated (Rotation)	Uncollated (Rotation)	Staple	Punch	Fold&Staple	Multi Half Fold	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)
	1>	1										П
	1>	2										
	2>											
	2>											
		ing Origina	l Glass							_		
		ing ADF					_			_	_	
		parate Sca	n				_			_	_	
		Il Color					_			_	<u> </u>	
	Bla						⊢		H	┝	⊢	
		gle Color		С	С	С	c	С	С	С	С	
	Aur	ay Scale to Color			-	-	۲	-	-	۲	۲	
	AP						\vdash			\vdash	\vdash	\vdash
	AM						\vdash			\vdash	\vdash	
		00 Magnifi	cation		0	0	Н			\vdash	\vdash	Н
	Zo				Ť	Ŭ	\vdash			\vdash	\vdash	
		tation									\vdash	
		Bind	Right & Left Binding									
		Direction	Upper Binding									
			Normal									П
		Direction	Left									
		Direction	UpsideDown									
			Right									
,			Text/Photo									
Basic		Image	Photo								_	
Ba		mago	Text				_			_	_	
	ng		Мар			_	_	_	_	_	<u> </u>	
	Original Setting		Printed				\vdash			_		
	SIE	Туре	Photo Paper		_	_	<u> </u>	_	_	_	<u> </u>	
	ging		Copied Inkjet	_		_	\vdash	_	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	
	Orig		Normal				\vdash			\vdash	\vdash	
		Special	Mixed Original		0	0	\vdash	\vdash		0	0	0
		opeo.a.	Z-Fold Original		ŏ	ŏ	\vdash		Ť	Ĭ	Ĭ	Ť
			Normal		Ť	_						
		Thickness	Thick				П		П		Г	П
			Thin									
			Standard									
		Size	Custom Size									
		0126	Custom Size (Full Area)		0	0						
			Tab Paper		0	0					_	
		After Proo			L	_	_	_	L		_	
			can (during scanning)	_	_		_			_	_	
	_ ا		opy (When Current comp.)	0	0	0	_		00	00	0	
	Others	Interrupt Co	opy (Stop Immediately)	*17 C	000	0 C	0	0	<u> </u>	10	0	
	g	Reserve J			۲	٢	۲	<u> </u>	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash
	Ĭ	Without Al			\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н
		Coin Vend		0	0			\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	Н	
			r (serial/card management)		۲	۲		\vdash		\vdash	\vdash	Н
\Box		John Vondo										

None: Compatible

*: Condition last selected has priority. (Condition in the far left column will be released.)

- $\circ \text{: Grayed out} \\$
- ▲: Warning message displays.
- A: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Unreleasable.
- B: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Releasable.
- C: Not specified
- D: Condition in the far left column does not function (ignored).
- E: Not grayed out but unavailable
- *1 Separate Scan mode is selected automatically.
- *2 1->1 mode is selected automatically.
- *3 Rotation without Auto Zoom is unavailable in Mixed.

9-50 bizhub PRO C5501

9

- *5 Using IP scanner, Automatic exposure is unavailable.
- *6 Image Distinction Level: Color Text only is grayed out or released automatically.
- *8 1->2 or 2->2 mode is selected automatically.
- *9 After making proof copy, Simplex/Duplex mode can be altered in printing side only. 2->1 and 2->2 appear grayed out when 1->1 or 1->2 is selected, and vice versa.
- *11 1->1 or 1->2 mode is selected automatically. With 1->2 selected, Separate Scan mode is also selected.
- *12 ADF mode is activated automatically.
- *13 Full Color mode is selected automatically.
- *14 1->1 or 1->2 mode is selected automatically.
- *17 Output tray is limited to the secondary (sub) tray.
- *18 Auto Paper Select is unavailable with the ADF kept open. (The message "Select paper size" will be displayed when [Start] is pressed.)

9-52 bizhub PRO C5501

10 Color adjustment

Color adjustment 10

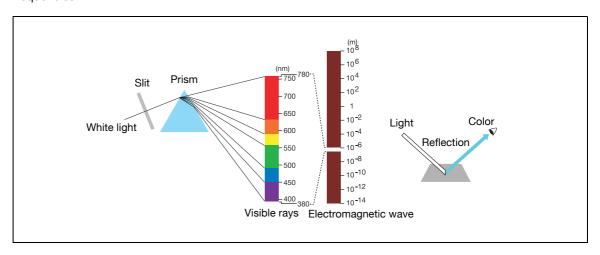
10 Color adjustment

10.1 About colors

RGB and **CMYK** models

Have you ever wondered why the world surrounding us appears colored to our eyes? Light is electromagnetic waves with wavelengths between about 380 - 780 nm, also called visible rays. The wavelengths of visible rays can be separated into the rainbow colors violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange, and red, from the shortest wavelength in order. When all the wavelengths of the visible rays strike your eye at the same time, white color is perceived.

We see the objects in color because they reflect or transmit visible light of different wavelengths or frequencies.

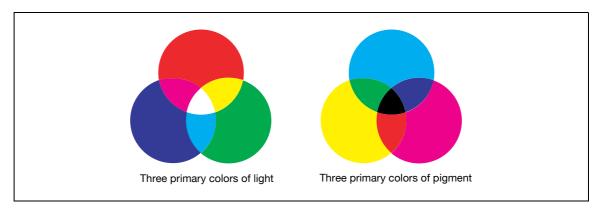


The colors separated from visible light are called primary colors. Primary colors cannot be produced from other colors. These colors, however, can be combined to make up any other color (color mixture).

The color mixture provides two different types, three primary colors of light and three primary colors of pigment.

The three primary colors of light are called additive color mixture, and the more colors are added, the brighter it will be. Mixing red (R), green (G), and blue (B) colored lights, various colors can be created.

The three primary colors of pigment are called subtractive color mixture, and the more colors are added, the darker it will be. Various colors can be created by mixing cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) pigments (such as ink or toner), however, black (K) is actually used as the fourth color in addition to the three primary pigments.



HSB Model

This model is based on the human perception of color.

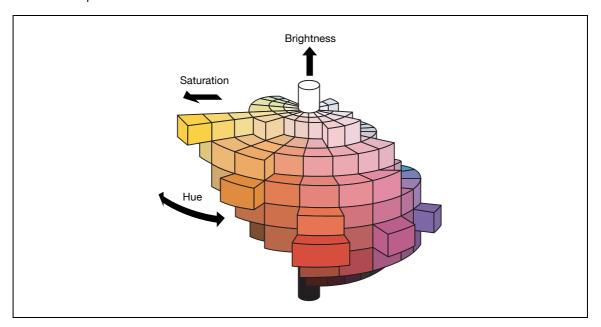
When our eyes perceive colors in objects, we receive the information not only on the color itself (reddish, bluish, etc.) but the brightness (rather bright, dark, etc.) and the purity (vivid, dull, etc.) of the color.

The color perception (reddish, bluish, etc.) is defined as hue (H).

The strength or purity of the color is defined as saturation (S), and the lightness or darkness of the color is defined as brightness (B).

The above three elements are called the three attributes of color.

With these three attributes, the Munsell color system has been created to describe colors in a three-dimensional space.



10-4 bizhub PRO C5501

Color adjustment

10.2 Color copy quality

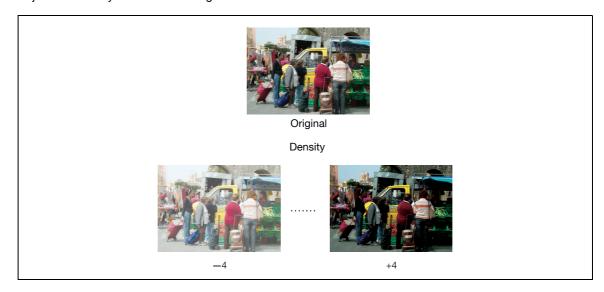
Modifying colors

As mentioned above, colors can be reproduced by mixing four pigments, the three primary colors cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K).

To enhance the copy quality, this machine allows you to modify colors by means of the three attributes of color based upon the human eye and perception.

The following methods are provided:

Adjust the density of the whole image.



Adjust the hue, saturation, and brightness.



10-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Color adjustment

The hue adjustment leads the color of the image to another color adjacent in the color circle of red (R), yellow (Y), green (G), cyan (C), blue (B), and magenta (M).

Change the hue by varying the image's red (R), green (G), and blue (B) individually or mutually.



Change the hue by varying the image's cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K) individually or mutually.



10-8 bizhub PRO C5501

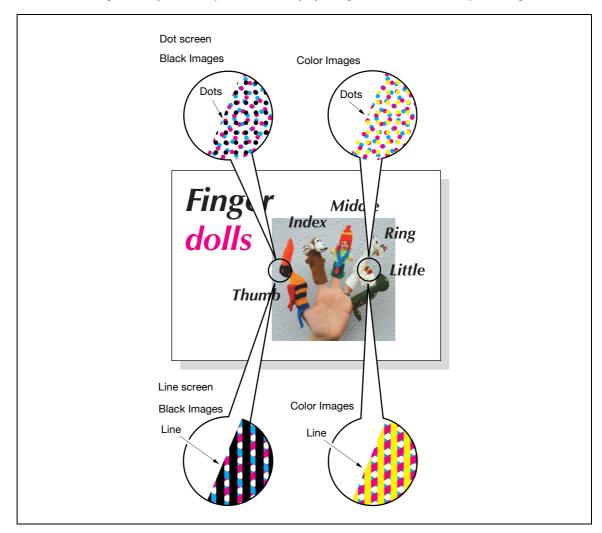
Color adjustment

Reproducing images

This machine provides two methods for reproducing images.

The Dither (Error Diffusion) method uses small dots (600 dots per inch) to reproduce the image. This method is appropriate for text originals.

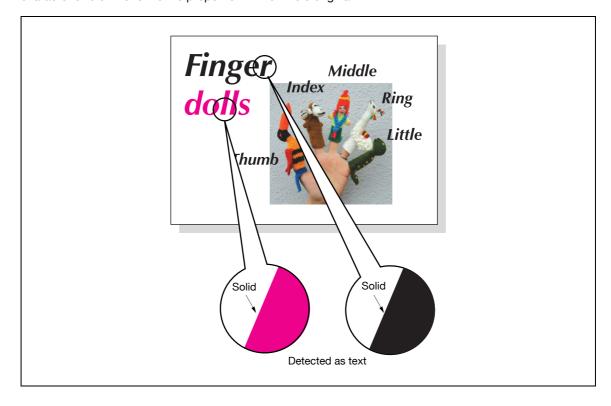
The Screen method also provides two methods, Line Screen and Dot Screen. The Line Screen uses many halftone lines, like scanning lines of a television, while Dot Screen uses small dots to reproduce the image. The Screen methods provide fine quality in reproducing the gradation in scanned photographic images, however, text originals may not be reproduced clearly by using the same method as photo originals.



What Is image distinction level?

In many cases, originals include both photo and text. Although the text is normally printed in black, a color printer inevitably uses not only the black toner but cyan, magenta, and yellow in layers to reproduce the black text. Using the Screen method, the color printer may add colors in large or bold characters to reproduce the text in the same way as the photo.

While scanning such originals, this machine detects and determines the photo portion and text area, so that the text area should be reproduced in single color and the photo portion in full color. This function also allows you to obtain the optimum print results by modifying the standard for image distinction level according to the character size of the text or its proportion in the whole original.



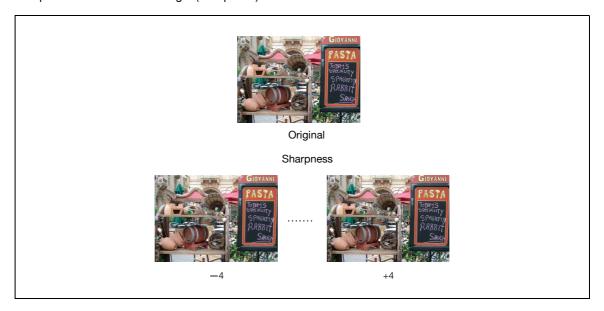
10-10 bizhub PRO C5501

Color adjustment

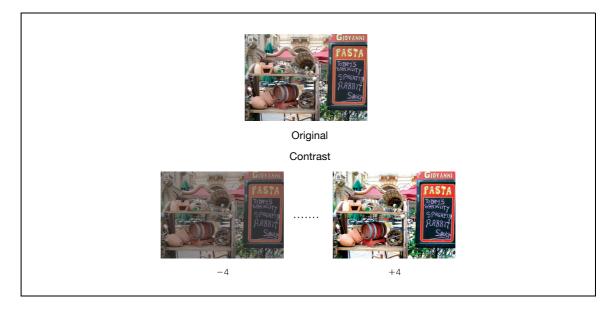
Applying filters

In addition to the color adjustment and image reproduction methods, this machine allows you to apply the following filters to improve the copy image quality.

Sharpen the outline of the image. (Sharpness)



Increase the contrast of the image. (Contrast)



Increase shine on the image. (Glossy)



Original





Improving color copy quality

To improve the color copy quality, this machine provides the three types of adjustment methods: color adjustment, Selecting the image reproduction method and its adjustment, and other adjustments.

The color adjustment is performed by varying the level of pigments in RGB model or CMYK model, or by modifying the hue, saturation, and brightness of the image.

To reproduce the copy image, select one of the two methods, Line Screen and Dot Screen. The Image Distinction Level function will help in selecting the most appropriate method for each part of the original to make the copies of scanned image.

For further improvement, use Copy Density or apply filters for Sharpness, Contrast, and Glossy.

To use keys under [Quality Adjust.] on the copy screen

When any setting is made on the Quality Adjustment Screen, the selection will be listed as one of three keys in the area under the [Quality Adjust.] key on the Copy Screen. If four or more selections have been made, use [▼] and [▲] to scroll.

Use this shortcut to directly jump to the setting screen or Quality Adjustment Screen (for the function without subsequent screen), if any setting change is desired.





Detail

Machine administrator can set the machine to display the frequently-used function key in the area under the [Quality Adjust.] key, so that the setting screen of that function can be directly accessed by a single touch from the Copy Screen.

See the User's guide - POD Administrator's reference, if desired.

10-12 bizhub PRO C5501

10.3 Adjusting density level

Automatic exposure operates to detect the density level of the original image while scanning, and automatically selects the appropriate density for the copy.

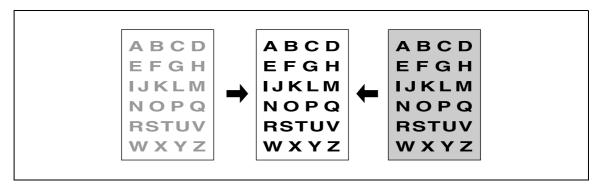


Detail

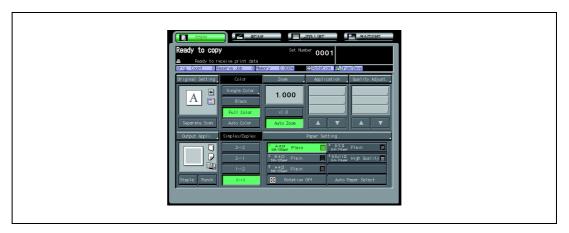
The density to be selected automatically using Automatic exposure can be adjusted on the machine. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

To adjust copy density

Follow the procedure below to select the exposure (density) manually to make darker or lighter copies.



- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

Touch [Copy Density] to display the Copy Density Screen.



4 Select the desired density level.



- Touch the desired density level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the copy image lighter, or from [+1] to [+4] to make it darker.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle density level.
- To resume the Automatic exposure, touch [Auto] to highlight it.

5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- 2 Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

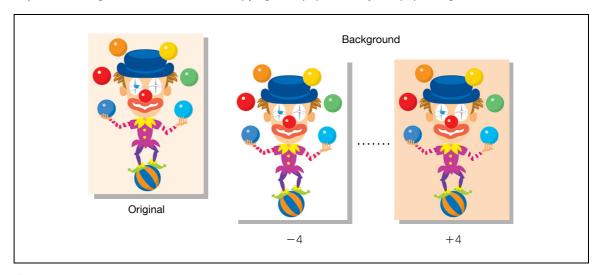
The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Copy Density] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to directly jump to the Copy Density Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-14 bizhub PRO C5501

To adjust background

Adjust the background whiteness when copying newspaper or recycled paper original.



- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

Touch [Adj. Back.] to display the Adjust Background Screen.



4 Adjust the density level of the background.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the background lighter, or from [+1] to [+4] to make it darker.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle density level.
- 5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- 2 Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 6 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Adj. Back.] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

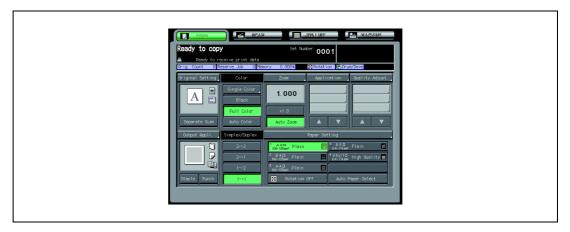
Use this key to directly jump to the Adjust Background Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-16 bizhub PRO C5501

To adjust B-side prevent

Adjust the density level of the back side lighter when copying dark originals.

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

Touch [B-Side Prevent] to display the B-Side Prevent Screen.



4 Adjust the density level of the back side.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the back side lighter.
- Touch [Standard] if adjustment is not needed.

5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- ? Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [B-Side Prevent] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to directly jump to the B-Side Prevent Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-18 bizhub PRO C5501

Color adjustment

10

10.4 Changing colors using RGB values

Change the color by modifying each value of red (R), green (G), and blue (B).



Note

In Full Color mode, this adjustment properly reflects on the strength of each color (red, green, and blue) reproduced on a printed image.

Using Black or Single Color mode, this adjustment will operate to the reproducibility of each color of colored original, giving effect to the strength of black or single color on a printed image.



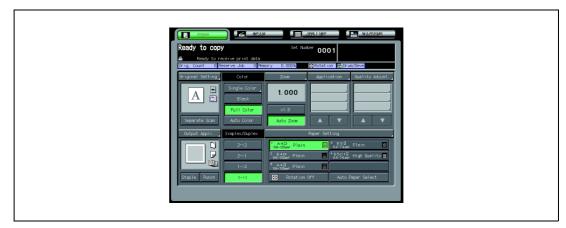
Detail

To reproduce the yellow part of the original which cannot be printed normally in Single Color mode, make the Red stronger.

To change the hue of the printed image in Single Color mode, see "Changing colors using CMYK value" on page 10-35.

To modify RGB value

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch the desired color key.



The Red, Green, or Blue Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

4 Adjust the color value.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the color weaker, or from [+1] to [+4] to make
 it stronger.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.
- 5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- 2 Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 6 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the modified color key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to directly jump to that color adjustment screen, if any setting change is desired.

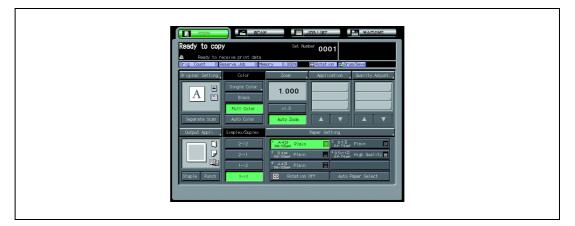
10-20 bizhub PRO C5501

10.5 Changing colors using HSB values

Change the color of the copy image by making adjustments to Hue, Saturation, and Brightness.

To adjust hue

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.

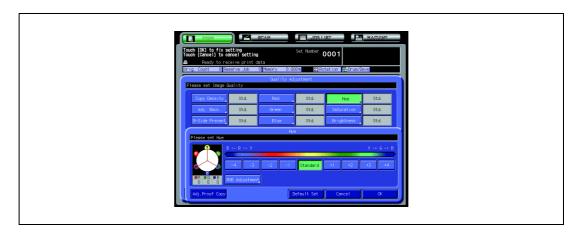


The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Hue] to display the Hue Screen.



4 Make the desired adjustment.



Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make yellow closer to red, and red closer to magenta.
 (Adjustment goes anticlockwise in the color circle.)

Or, touch a key from [+1] to [+4] to make yellow closer to green, and green closer to cyan. (Adjustment goes clockwise in the color circle.)

- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.
- To adjust the hue by setting fine adjustment in each color of RGB, touch [RGB Adjustment] to display the Fine Adjustment Screen.



- Make fine adjustment on each color, then touch [OK] to return to the Hue Screen.
- 6 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- 2 Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 7 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

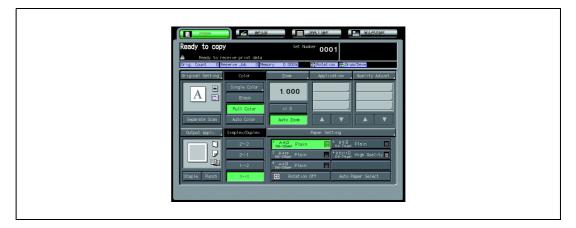
The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Hue] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to directly jump to the Hue Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-22 bizhub PRO C5501

To adjust saturation

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Saturation] to display the Saturation Screen.



4 Make the desired adjustment.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the colors calm, or from [+1] to [+4] to make them vivid.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.

To adjust the saturation by setting fine adjustment in each color of RGB, touch [RGB Adjustment] to display the Fine Adjustment Screen.



- Make fine adjustment on each color, then touch [OK] to return to the Saturation Screen.
- 6 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 7 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Saturation] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Saturation Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-24 bizhub PRO C5501

To adjust brightness

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Brightness] to display the Brightness Screen.



4 Select the desired brightness level.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the image darker, or from [+1] to [+4] to make it brighter.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.

5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- ? Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 6 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Brightness] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Brightness Screen, if any setting change is desired.

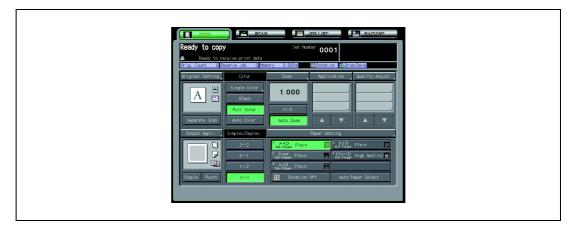
10-26 bizhub PRO C5501

10.6 Adjusting sharpness

Use this function to sharpen the outline of copy image.

To adjust sharpness

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Sharpness] to display the Sharpness Screen.



4 Select the desired sharpness level.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to make the outline smoother, or from [+1] to [+4] to make it sharper.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.

5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- ? Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 6 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Sharpness] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Sharpness Screen, if any setting change is desired.

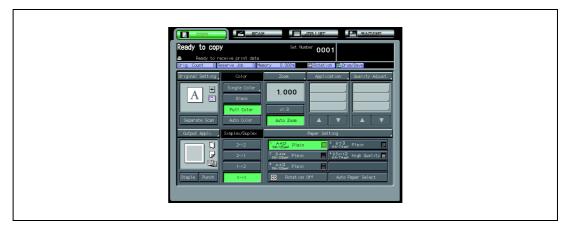
10-28 bizhub PRO C5501

10.7 Adjusting contrast

Use this function to increase the contrast of copy image.

To adjust contrast

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.

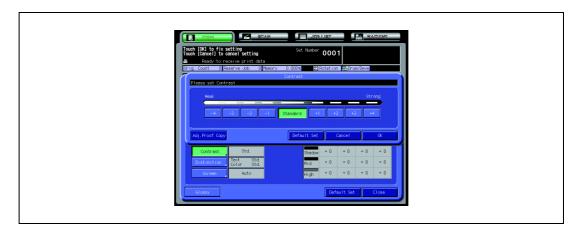


The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Contrast] to display the Contrast Screen.



4 Select the desired contrast level.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to decrease the contrast, or from [+1] to [+4] to increase the contrast.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.

5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- ? Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Contrast] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Contrast Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-30 bizhub PRO C5501

10.8 Setting image distinction level

Image Distinction Level detects and determines the photo portion and text area of the original when scanned, allowing you to obtain the optimum print result by modifying the standard for detection according to the character size of the text or its proportion in the whole original.

For this adjustment, two items are provided; Text/Photo proportion adjustment and Black/Color text proportion adjustment.

- Text/Photo changes the ratio of detecting the text area of the original.
- Color Text changes the proportion in detecting that the original text is black or colored.

Follow the procedure below to make the adjustment.

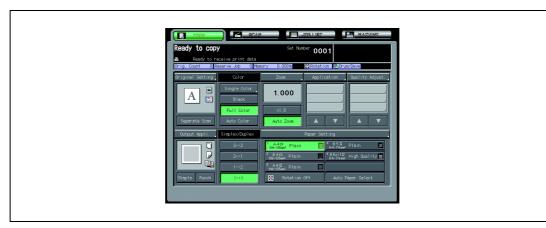


Detail

For details on detecting images, see "What Is image distinction level?" on page 10-10.

To set image distinction level

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Distinction] to display the Image Distinction Level Screen.



4 Make an adjustment to Text/Photo.



- Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to increase the proportion of photo, or from [+1] to [+4] to increase the proportion of text.
- Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.
- 5 Make an adjustment to Color Text.
 - Touch the desired level key from [-1] to [-4] to increase the proportion of black text, or from [+1] to [+4] to increase the proportion of colored text.
 - Touch [Standard] to select the middle level.
- 6 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Distinction] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Image Distinction Level Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-32 bizhub PRO C5501

Color adjustment 10

10.9 Selecting screen type or compression

This machine provides two methods to reproduce the print image; Line Screen and Dot Screen. The machine selects an appropriate method automatically according to the other copy conditions selected for the job.



Detail

See "Reproducing images" on page 10-9 for details of Line Screen and Dot Screen.

Dot ccreen and line ccreen

Select one of the following four types of screen according to the original type and desired print result.

- Dot 1: Dot ScreenDot 2: Dot ScreenLine 1: Line Screen
- Line 2: Line Screen

The print result may not be satisfactory depending on the original type. In this case, try another screen type.



Detail

Dot 2 and Line 2 also provide the lower line screen (type 2) as an option. This setting can be made in the Administrator setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Compression

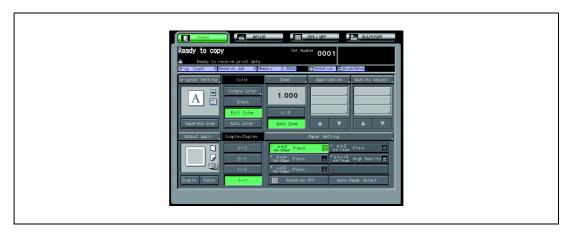
The desired copy result may not be obtained because the internal memory overflows when using the reproducing method selected manually or automatically according to the other copy conditions of the job. In this case, select Compression to give priority to compressing the scanned data. The Dither method is used instead of Line Screen or Dot Screen.

Auto

Auto selects an appropriate reproducing method automatically according to the selected copy conditions. This mode is initially selected.

To select reproducing method

- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Screen] to display the Screen Setting Screen.



4 Select the desired reproducing method.



- To select the Line Screen, touch [Line 1] or [Line 2/Type 1] to highlight it.
- To select the Dot Screen, touch [Dot 1] or [Dot 2/Type 1] to highlight it.
- To compress the scanned data, touch [Compression] to highlight it.
- Touch [Auto] to highlight it, if reproducing method should be selected automatically.
- 5 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Screen] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust] key

Use this key to jump to the Screen Setting Screen, if any setting change is desired.

10-34 bizhub PRO C5501

10.10 Changing colors using CMYK value

Change the hue by varying the image's cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K) individually or mutually.

This adjustment can be made in each density area (shadow, mid tone, or highlight) of the individual color, or in the whole density area of each color.

The adjustment value ranges from -10 to +10.

To adjust color balance

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

Touch [Color Balance] to display the Color Balance Screen.



4 Select the desired density area.



- Check the shadow, mid tone, and highlight areas of the original, then select the desired density area to adjust the color balance.
- If the adjustment is necessary for the whole density area, touch [ALL] to highlight it.
- 5 Select the color and specify the adjustment value.
 - Touch Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black to highlight it.
 Then, touch [▼] or [▲] to display the desired adjustment value from -10 to +10.
 Select smaller number to make the color lighter, or larger number to make it darker.
 The adjustment can be made for each density area.
- 6 Touch [OK].

The Quality Adjustment Screen will be restored.

- Do you want to resume the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].
- Do you want to check the adjustment result?
- → Touch [Adj. Proof Copy] to print a sample copy.
- 7 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Color Balance] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

Use this key to jump to the Color Balance Screen, if any setting change is desired.

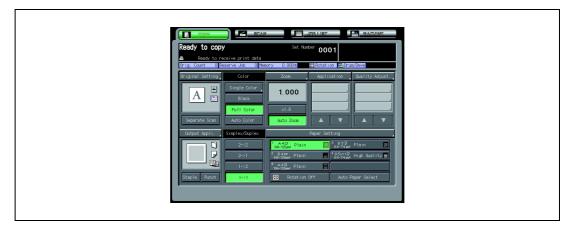
10-36 bizhub PRO C5501

10.11 Selecting glossy

Use this function to increase shine on the copy image.

To specify glossy

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Quality Adjust.] on the Copy Screen.



The Quality Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Glossy] to highlight it.



4 Touch [Close] on the Quality Adjustment Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored with the [Glossy] key displayed and highlighted under the [Quality Adjust.] key.

- Do you want to restore the initial setting?
- → Touch [Default Set].



Detail

Setting Glossy will lower the copy speed. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

10.12 Copy conditions incompatible with color adjustment

														Е	3as	ic												\neg
	 				Г	Г	Г		Г	Г		П			П						C	rigi	inal	Set	ting	7		\neg
																				ind ction)ire	ctio	n		lm	age	
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Color Adjustment	1>1	1>2	2>1	2>2	Using Original Glass	Using ADF	Separate Scan	Full Color	Black	Single Color	Gray Scale	Auto Color	APS	AMS	1.000 Magnification	Zoom	Rotation	Right & Left Binding	Upper Binding	Normal	Left	UpsideDown	Right	Text/Photo	Photo	Text	Мар
	Copy Density											С																
	Adjust Background											О																
	B-Side Prevent											O																
ΙĦ	RGB Adjustment											O																
Adjustment	Hue									D	Δ	О																
동	Saturation									D	Δ	O																
듇	Brightness									D	Д	O																
	Screen											O															*	*
Color	Sharpness											О																
O	Contrast											O																
	Distinction									*6	*6	O																
	Color Balance				L		L			D	Д	О										L			L			Ш
	Glossy											С																

												E	3as	ic										
							Orig		Se	tting	g								С	the	s			
			Ту	ре		S	эес	ial	Thi	ckn	ess		S	ze										£
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Color Adjustment	Printed	PhotoPaper	Copied	Inkjet	Normal	Mixed Original	Z-Fold Original	Normal	Thick	Thin	Standard	Custom Size	Custom Size (Full Area)	Tab Paper	After Proof Copy	Separate Scan (during scanning)	Interrupt Copy (When Current comp.)	Interrupt Copy (Stop Immediately)	IP Scanner	Reserve Job	Without ADF	Coin Vendor (parallel)	Coin Vendor (serial/card management)
	Copy Density						П															С	С	С
	Adjust Background																					С	С	С
	B-Side Prevent																					С	0	С
ΙĘ	RGB Adjustment																					О	О	O
le.	Hue																					С	O	С
15	Saturation																					C	O	С
턍	Brightness																					О	O	С
ΙŽ	Screen																					О	О	О
Color Adjustment	Sharpness																					O	O	С
ΙŎ	Contrast																					С	С	С
	Distinction																					С	О	С
	Color Balance																					O	О	С
	Glossy																					С	С	С

10-38 bizhub PRO C5501

		Г		(Co	loi	r A	djı	ıst	me	ent										Аp	plic	cati	on						\neg
		Г	П																Fil	e E	dit						lma	ge l	Edi	t
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Color Adjustment	Copy Density	Adjust Background	B-Side Prevent	RGB Adjustment	Hue	Saturation	Brightness	Screen	Sharpness	Contrast	Distinction	Color Balance	Glossy	Insert Sheet	Cover Sheet (PI)	Chapter	Chapter (Print Insertion)	Combine Originals	Booklet Pagination	Insert Image	Book Copy	Program Job (each job)	Program Job (after combined)	Multi-Page Enlargement	Non-Image Area Erase	Image Centering	Neg-/ Positive Reverse	Page Margin (Shift)	Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)
	Copy Density																							С						
	Adjust Background	Γ	N		П																			С				П	П	П
	B-Side Prevent																							С						
Ιŧ	RGB Adjustment				V																			С						
Color Adjustment	Hue					\setminus																		С						
lst.	Saturation																							С						
투	Brightness																							С						
ΙŽ	Screen																							С						
응	Sharpness																							С						
O	Contrast																							С						
	Distinction																							С						
	Color Balance																							С						
	Glossy																							С						

					Αрр													0	utp	ut	Aр	plic	cati	on						
					Ima	ıge	E	dit																					П	П
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Color Adjustment	Image Repeat	Image Repeat (Auto)	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	Frame Erasure	Center Erase	Stamp	Watermark	Image Overlay	Program Overlay	Storing an Overlay Image	Face Up	Face Down	1toN	Nto1	Collated	Uncollated	Collated (Rotation)	Uncollated (Rotation)	Staple	Punch	Fold&Staple	Trimming	Multi Center	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)	Tri-Fold-in (Inside Print)	Tri-Fold-out (Inside Print)	Double Parallel (Inside Print)	Gate Fold (Inside Print)
	Copy Density																													
	Adjust Background																													
	B-Side Prevent																													
l۲	RGB Adjustment																													
le.	Hue																													
먌	Saturation																													
Color Adjustment	Brightness				П																									
I'A	Screen																													
l응	Sharpness				П																									
Ö	Contrast																												П	П
	Distinction																													
	Color Balance																													
	Glossy					1																								

None: Compatible

- o: Grayed out
- *: Condition last selected has priority. (Condition in the far left column will be released.)
- $\ensuremath{\mathsf{A}}\xspace$ Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Unreleasable.
- B: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Releasable.
- C: Not specified
- D: Condition in the far left column does not function (ignored).
- E: Not grayed out but unavailable
- *6 Image Distinction Level: Color Text only is grayed out or released automatically.

Application functions

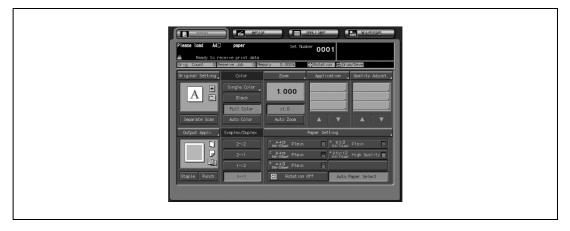
11 Application functions

11.1 To use application function

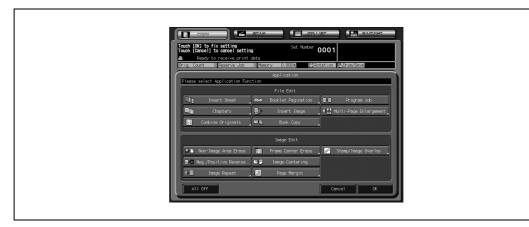
Follow the procedure below to display the Application Screen and select the desired copying features.

To display application screen

- Touch [COPY] tab on the Machine Status Screen to display the Copy Screen.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.



The Application Screen will be displayed on the touch panel.



- If you touch a function key, another screen or two will display to enable you to enter the appropriate settings (except for Program Job, Non-Image Area Erase, Neg./Positive Reverse, and Image Centering).
- Various functions can be used in combination, however, if one function on the menu is incompatible with another, it will appear dimmed.
- Do you want to restore the previous setting?
- → Touch [Cancel].
- 2 Do you want to cancel all the selected application functions with the setting made for each remained?
- → Touch [All Off] on the Application Screen.
- Do you want to resume the initial setting?
- → Press [Reset] on the control panel.



3 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen to return to the Copy Screen.



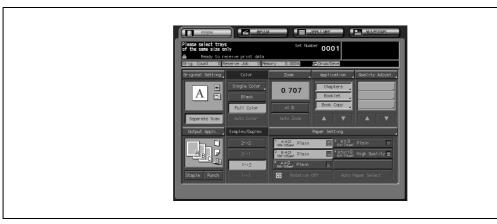
Reminder

Only with the Copy Screen displayed, you can press [Start] to start copying.

To use keys under [Application] on the copy screen

When any setting is made on the Application Screen, the selection will be listed as one of three keys in the area under the [Application] key on the Copy Screen. If four or more selections have been made, use $[\P]$ and [A] to scroll.

Use this shortcut to directly jump to the setting screen or Application Screen (for the function without subsequent screen), if any setting change is desired.





Detail

You may find a [Bookmark] key on some subsequent screens. Touch this key to highlight it, if desired, so that the screen may be directly accessed from the Copy Screen or Check Screen to change the setting you made.

See page 13-3 for details.

Machine administrator can set the machine to display the frequently-used application function key in the area under the [Application] key, so that the setting screen of that function can be directly accessed by a single touch from the Copy Screen.

See the User's guide - POD Administrator's reference, if desired.

11-4 bizhub PRO C5501

11.2 Inserting sheets and covers: Insert sheet

Use Insert Sheet in print mode or blank mode to insert chapter sheets or separator sheets into the finished set, as well as front and back covers.

The covers and insertions can be fed from different tray source for each, and also available from Paper inserter PI-502 option mounted on the Finisher FS-520/FS-607.

Front/back cover setting

The following functions are provided in Front/Back Cover setting. Front (Print or Blank) and Back (Print or Blank) settings are compatible.

Function	Description
Front Cover + Print	The first page of the original will be printed onto the front cover. When making double-sided copies, the second page of the original will be printed onto the back side of front cover.
	REPORT 1 2 3 4 REPORT 1
Front Cover+ Blank	A blank sheet for front cover will be inserted as the first sheet of copied set. The same result will be obtained when making double-sided copies.
	REPORT 1 2 3 4
Back Cover + Copy	The last page of the original will be printed onto the back cover. When making double-sided copies, the last two pages of the original will be printed onto both sides of back cover.
	REPORT 1 2 3 4
Back Cover + Blank	A blank sheet for back cover will be inserted as the last sheet of copied set. The same result will be obtained when making double-sided copies.
	1 2 3 4 REPORT 1 1 1 2 3 4



e.g. Selecting [Print] with page 5 specified as insertion location:

Simplex/Duplex	Description
1→1	The 5th page of single-sided original is copied onto the insertion, which will be the 5th sheet of copied set.
	→ (12345678)
1→2	The 5th and 6th pages of single-sided original are copied onto both sides of the insertion, which will be the 3rd sheet of copied set. With page 6 specified, the same result will be obtained.
	→ 1 3 5 7 1 3
2→2	The 9th and 10th pages of double-sided original are copied onto both sides of the insertion, which will be the 5th sheet of copied set. With page 6 specified, the 11th and 12th pages of the double-sided original are duplex-copied onto the insertion which will be the 6th sheet of copied set.
	7 9 11 1 3 5 7 9 1 1
2→1	The 5th page of double-sided original is simplex-copied onto the insertion, which will be the 5th sheet of copied set.
	→ 1 2 3 4 5 T 8

11-6 bizhub PRO C5501

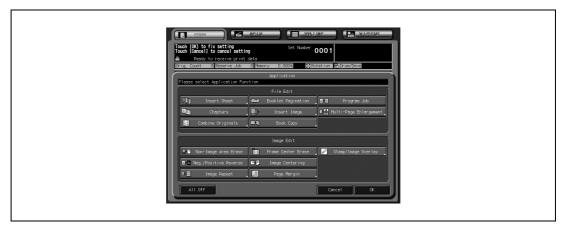
e.g. Selecting [Blank] with page 5 specified as insertion location:

Simplex/Duplex	Description
1→1	A blank insertion will be added as the 6th sheet of copied set, after the 5th page of single-sided original is simplex-copied.
	→ 12345678
1→2	A blank insertion will be added as the 4th sheet of copied set, after the 5th and 6th pages of single-sided original are duplex-copied. With page 6 specified, the same result will be obtained.
	→ 12345678 → 1357
2→2	A blank insertion will be added as the 6th sheet of copied set, after the 9th and 10th pages of double-sided original are duplex-copied. With page 6 specified, a blank insertion will be added as the 7th sheet of copied set, after the 11th and 12th pages of double-sided original are duplex-copied.
	7 9 11 1 3 5 7 9 11
2→1	A blank insertion will be added as the 6th sheet of copied set, after the 5th page of double-sided original is simplex-copied.
	→ 12345 678

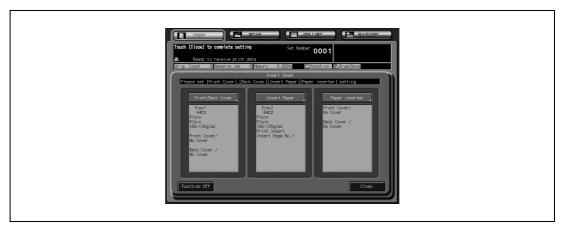
- ✓ Use ADF. Use Separate Scan mode if original count exceeds 100 or if original glass is desired for scanning the original. See page 9-16 for details.
- ✓ Trays for copy paper, front/back covers, and insertions should have the same paper size loaded. Auto Zoom is automatically selected.
- ✓ Max. insert sheets: 30 locations, from 1~999, including front and back covers
- ✔ Paper inserter is available as additional front/back cover tray source. In this case, Paper inserter will feed the first (front) cover and the last (back) cover.
- Position the original.
- 2 Load paper into the tray.
 - Load regular sheets, insertion sheets and covers into any tray. When using the Paper inserter, load covers or insertion sheets into the Paper inserter tray.
 Be sure that the trays for copy paper, front/back cover, and insertions have the same paper size loaded.
 - Check the tray information on the Machine Status Screen or Copy Screen and use the specified paper; otherwise machine trouble may occur.
 - To use any other paper type/size than the specified paper, touch [Paper Setting] on the Copy Screen to change the setting temporarily. page 9-30 for details.
- Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.



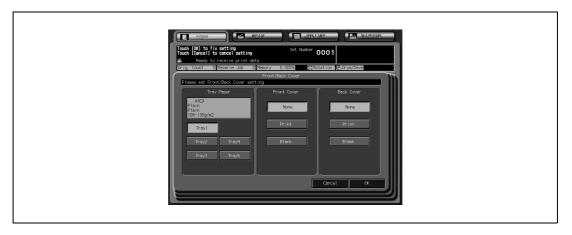
4 Touch [Insert Sheet] on the Application Screen.



5 Select the desired cover mode.



- Touch [Front/Back Cover] on the Insert Sheet Screen.

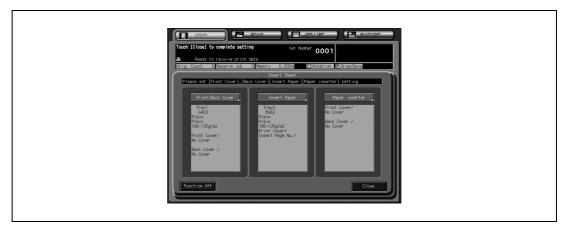


- Touch the desired tray key to select the cover sheet tray source.
- Select the desired front/back cover mode.
 Touch [None] if no cover is desired, [Print] to insert a copied front/back cover, or touch [Blank] to insert a blank front/back cover.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Insert Sheet Screen, or touch [Cancel] to restore the previous setting.

11-8 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Select the desired insertion mode.
 - Touch [Insert Paper] on the Insert Sheet Screen.



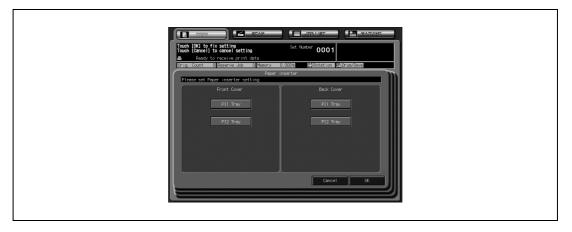
- Touch the desired tray key to select the insertion tray source.
- Select the desired insertion mode.
 Touch [Print] to insert a copied insertion, or touch [Blank] to insert a blank insertion.
- 7 Enter the page number.



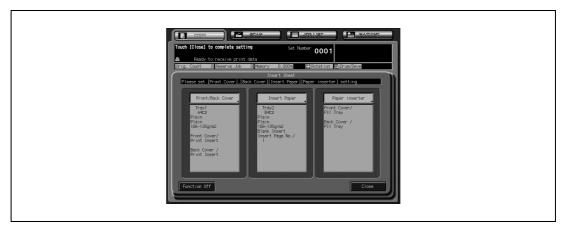
- Use the control panel keypad to enter the page number of insertion location. Touch [Set] after each entry to move to the next key.
 - To clear an incorrect entry, touch [Delete].
 - Repeat this procedure to make all the page entry.
- Up to 30 insertion locations can be specified, including front and back covers. To enter the 16th to 30th page locations, touch [▼] to scroll to the next page.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Insert Sheet Screen, or touch [Cancel] to restore the previous setting.
- ? What if an entered page number is larger than the total original page count?
- → The entered page number will be ignored.
- Should the page number be entered from the smaller number?
- Not necessary. The page number entered at random will be sorted automatically.
- What if the same page number is entered twice?
- → The second entry will be ignored on the screen.



- 8 Specify the paper inserter setting, if desired.
 - Touch [Paper inserter] on the Insert Sheet Screen.



- Touch the desired tray key for each of front and back covers.
 If no paper inserter cover is desired, deselect all the keys.
 Using the Front/Back Cover mode in combination, the paper inserter covers will be added as the first and last covers.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Insert Sheet Screen, or touch [Cancel] to restore the previous setting.
- 9 Confirm the setting information on the screen.



- The Insert Sheet Screen provides the information of the setting made on each subsequent screen.
 If no setting change is desired, touch [Close] to return to the Application Screen.
- To release the Insert Sheet function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 10 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Insert Sheet] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

11 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

11-10 bizhub PRO C5501



11.3 Locating title pages on the right side: Chapters

Chapter is used with ADF in 1-2 mode for the purpose of locating title pages on the right side, rather than reverse side, of a duplex copy to improve the presentation of double-sided copies.

To effectively locate the title page on the right, a blank sheet will be automatically created on the reverse side of a sheet, if required.

e.g. Specifying pages 2 and 5 as title pages:

Simplex/Duplex	Description
1→2	A blank page is automatically added before the 2nd and 5th pages of the original, so that they will be printed on the front side of double-sided copies.
	→
1→2 + Print Insertion	The same page insertion is performed as above, and the chapter pages (2/3 and 5/6) will be printed on paper from another tray source.
	→
2→2	Since one double-sided original sheet is counted as two pages, the copy result will be exactly the same as above in 1→2 mode with None selected for Chapter paper.
	→
2→2 + Print Insertion	The same page insertion is performed as above, and the chapter pages (2/3 and 5/6) will be printed on paper from another tray source.
	→ 1 3 5 7 → 1 2 4 5 7

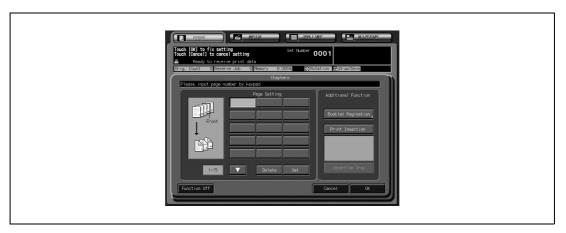
- ✓ Use ADF. Use Separate Scan mode if original count exceeds 100 or if original glass is desired for scanning the original. See page 9-16 for details.
- ✓ Max. title pages: 30 sheets, from 1 ~ 999
- ✓ The chapter page can be copied on the sheet from another tray source. (Print Insertion)
- ✓ Use Stamp together with this function to print chapter number onto chapter page in addition to page number, numbering, or watermark numbering.



- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Chapters] on the Application Screen.



- 4 Enter the page number of each title page.
 - Use the control panel keypad to enter the page number of each title page. Touch [Set] after each entry to move to the next key.
 - To clear an incorrect entry, touch [Delete].
 - Repeat this procedure to make all the page entry.
 - Up to 30 title pages can be specified. To enter the 16th to 30th title page locations, touch [▼] to scroll to the next page.
 - To change the selection of paper tray for copying title pages, touch [Print Insertion] on the Chapters Screen to enable the [Insertion Tray] key.
 - Use this key to change the currently selected paper tray displayed on the screen.



- What if an entered page number is larger than the total original page count?
- → The entered page number will be ignored.
- Should the page number be entered from the smaller number?
- Not necessary. Chapter insertions occur in sequence even if original page numbers are entered out of sequence.
- What if the same page number is entered twice?
- → The second entry will be ignored on the screen.
- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Chapters function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].

11-12 bizhub PRO C5501



6 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Chapters] key displayed under the [Application] key. Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

7 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].



Note

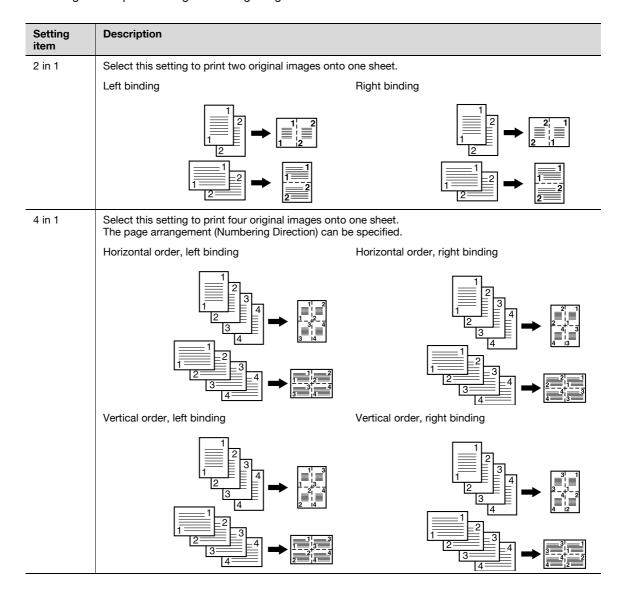
Touch [Booklet Pagination] on the Chapters Screen to use this function. In this case, touching [OK] on the Booklet Pagination Screen will return to the Chapters Screen.



11.4 Lay out several pages onto one sheet: Combine originals

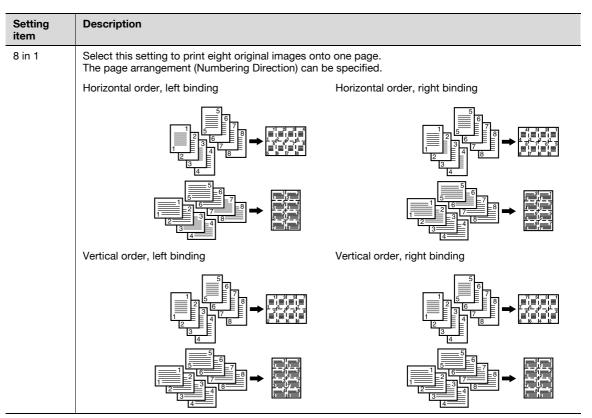
Use this function to lay out and copy a fixed number (2, 4, or 8) of pages onto one sheet of copy paper, so that the paper use can be saved.

The following functions are provided to Combine Originals. The direction of the page arrangement will vary according to the specified original binding margin.

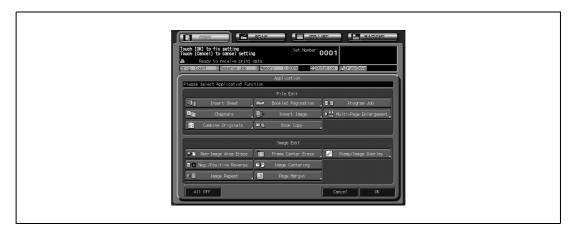


11-14 bizhub PRO C5501



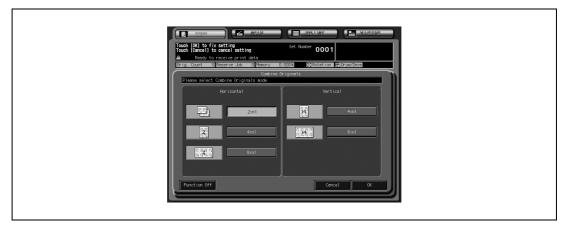


- ✓ Use ADF.
- ✓ If the original is placed on the original glass, Separate Scan mode will function automatically.
- Auto Zoom is automatically selected. Normally the fixed size of Tray 1 will be selected. (Available to be changed manually.)
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Combine Originals] on the Application Screen.





- 4 Select the desired Combine Originals mode.
 - Touch [2 in 1], [4 in 1] or [8 in 1] in the desired order area, referring to the illustration on the previous page.



- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Combine Originals function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 6 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Combine Originals] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Auto Zoom is automatically selected. When selecting any tray other than the one that is set and displayed on the Copy Screen, touch the desired tray key.

7 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

11-16 bizhub PRO C5501

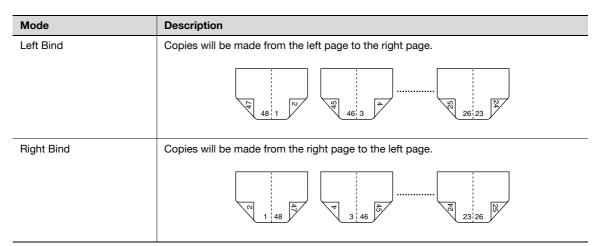


11.5 Making a multiple page signature booklet: Booklet pagination

Use this function to make a multiple page signature booklet on both sides of paper. Original images are scanned into memory and automatically arranged in booklet format in correct order.

If the machine is equipped with Finisher FS-607 option, folded and/or stapled booklets can be made.

Select the binding mode according to the desired booklet type.

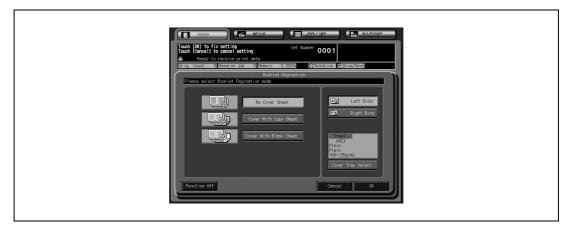


- ✓ Use ADF. Use Separate Scan mode if original count exceeds 100 or if original glass is desired for scanning the original. See page 9-16 for details.
- ✓ Available original sizes are A3 ¬, B4 ¬, A4 ¬/¬, and B5 ¬/¬.
- ✓ Original pages should be a multiple of 4 in 1-2 mode or a multiple of 2 in 2-2 mode; otherwise blank pages are automatically inserted to the last.
- ✓ Trays for copy paper and front/back covers should have the same paper size loaded.
- Auto Zoom is automatically selected. Select the desired paper size.
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Load the desired copy paper size in a tray.
 - Available paper sizes are A3 , B4 , A4 , and B5 .
 - When selecting cover sheet mode (Cover With Copy Sheet or Cover With Blank Sheet), load the same size cover in any other tray.
- 3 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 4 Touch [Booklet Pagination] on the Application Screen.





5 Touch to highlight the desired mode key.



- When a cover sheet is required, touch [Cover Tray Select] to select the cover sheet tray source.
- Touch [Left Bind] or [Right Bind] if you want to change the output order.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Booklet Pagination function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 If desired, select Reduce & Shift mode as follows.
 - Touch [Page Margin] on the Application Screen.
 - Select [Reduce & Shift] and [Double Sided], then specify the desired shift amount. For details, see page 11-46.
 - Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Application Screen.
- 8 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Booklet] key displayed under the [Application] key. Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Auto Zoom is selected automatically. To release Auto Zoom, select the desired magnification, then select paper size.

9 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

11-18 bizhub PRO C5501



11.6 Inserting different original images into printed sets: Insert image

Use this function to insert images scanned from the original glass into a set of original document scanned from the ADF at specified locations, then output the combined images as a finished set.

The images scanned from original glass will be added as the next page of specified document pages.

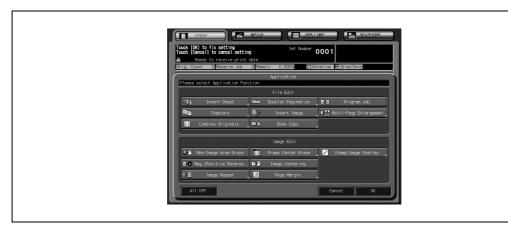
e.g. Specifying pages 2 and 5 as insertion locations:

Simplex/Duplex	Description
1→1	The first scanned image will be inserted after page 2 of the original, and the second scanned image will be inserted after page 5.
	→ 12345678 → 12345678
1→2	The first scanned image will be printed on the front side of the 2nd sheet after page 2 of the original is printed, and the second scanned image will be on the front side of the 4th sheet in the finished set.
	→ (a) (a) (b) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c
2→2	One double-sided original sheet will be counted as two pages, so the copy result will be exactly the same as above in 1→2 mode.
	→ 1 3 5 7 → 1 4 7
2→1	The first scanned image will be inserted after page 2 of the finished set, and the second scanned image will be inserted after page 5.
	∞

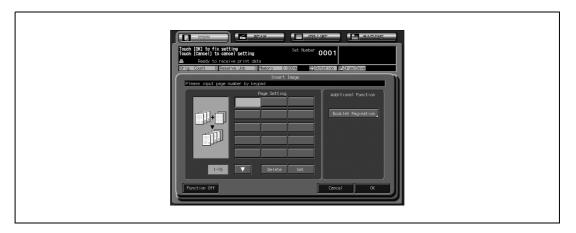
- ✓ Up to 30 locations can be specified for the original from 1 to 999 pages.
- Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.



- 1 Load the original in the ADF.
 - Be sure to arrange the original in page order, and then place it with the first page faceup. Up to 100 original sheets can be set.
 - If the original count exceeds 100, divide them into blocks not exceeding 100 sheets, and load them from the block with the first page.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Insert Image] on the Application Screen.



- 4 Specify the image insertion location by entering page number.
 - Use the control panel keypad to enter the page number. Touch [Set] after each entry to move to the next key.
 - To clear an incorrect entry, touch [Delete].
 - Repeat this procedure to make all the page entry.
 - Up to 30 image insertion locations can be specified. To enter the 16th to 30th locations, touch [▼]
 to scroll to the next page.



- What if an entered page number is larger than the total original page count?
- → The insertion images will be added at the end of the finished set.
- Should the page number be entered from the smaller number?
- → Not necessary. Insertions occur in sequence even if original page numbers are entered out of sequence.
- What if the same page number is entered twice or more?
- → The images will be inserted at specified location by the entered count.
- 5 If desired, select the Booklet Pagination function as follows.
 - Touch [Booklet Pagination] on the Insert Image Screen, then select the desired mode. For details, see page 11-17.
 - Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Insert Image Screen.

11-20 bizhub PRO C5501

- Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Insert Image function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Insert Image] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

The [Separate Scan] key on the Copy Screen also appears highlighted to show that the Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.

- 8 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
- 9 Press [Start] on the control panel.
 - The machine starts scanning the original loaded in the ADF.
- 10 Place the original of image insertion on the original glass.
 - Open the ADF, position the insertion original facedown on the original glass, then gently close the ADF.
- 11 Press [Start].
 - When scanning multiple originals, be sure to start with the first page and repeat steps 9 and 10 for all the originals in page order.
- 12 Touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.
- 13 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.

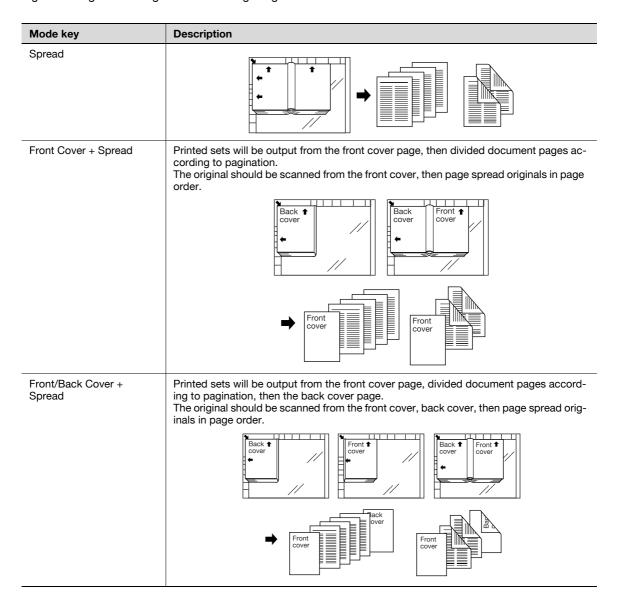


11.7 Dividing spread image into right and left pages: Book copy

Use this function to divide a page spread image, such as an open book or catalog, into two separate images of right and left pages. If front and back covers are desired, scan the cover pages first so that they will be printed without image division performed and all the original pages will be output in correct order.

Using Booklet Pagination in combination, original images are automatically arranged in booklet format in correct order to make a multiple page signature booklet on both sides of paper.

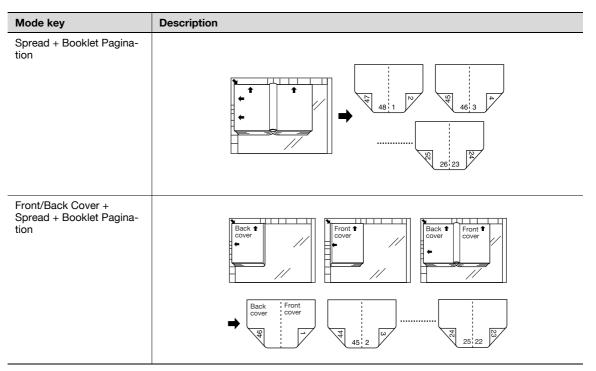
e.g. Scanning a book original from the original glass:



11-22 bizhub PRO C5501



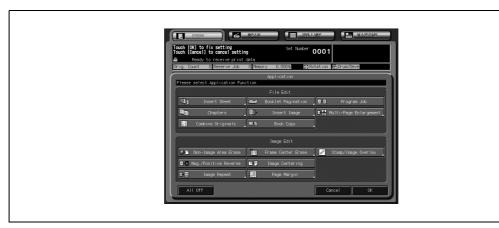
e.g. Using Booklet Pagination in combination to make a booklet:



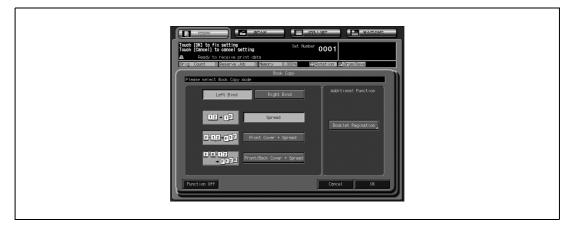
e.g. Using ADF to scan page spread originals to copy right and left pages separately:

Mode key	Description
Left Bind	Page spread originals will be scanned from the left page to the right page, and will be output in page order.
Right Bind	Page spread originals will be scanned from the right page to the left page, and will be output in page order.

- ✓ Available paper sizes: A4, B5, 8.5" x 11"
- ✓ Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.
- Non-Image Area Erase and Image Centering are automatically selected for scanning the original from original glass. Do not close the ADF throughout the scanning job.
- Position the original.
 - Using the original glass to scan, position the first page facedown with the ADF kept open.
 Using the ADF, arrange the original in page order, and then load it with the first page faceup. Up to 100 original sheets can be set.
 - If the original count exceeds 100, divide them into blocks not exceeding 100 sheets, and load them from the block with the first page.
 - When selecting the Front Cover or Front/Back Cover + Spread mode, follow the procedure on page 11-22 to scan the front cover first.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Book Copy] on the Application Screen.



- 4 Select the desired Book Copy mode.
 - Touch either [Spread], [Front Cover + Spread], or [Front/Back Cover + Spread] to highlight it.
 - Select the binding position of the original by touching [Left Bind] or [Right Bind].



- 5 To make a multiple page signature booklet using Booklet Pagination, follow the procedure below.
 - Touch [Booklet Pagination] on the Book Copy Screen to display the Booklet Pagination Screen, then select the desired mode. For details, see page 11-17.
 - Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Book Copy Screen.
- 6 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Book Copy function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].

11-24 bizhub PRO C5501

Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Book Copy] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

The [Separate Scan] key on the Copy Screen also appears highlighted to show that the Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.

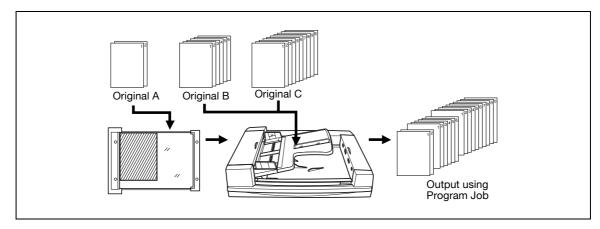
- 8 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
 - Available paper sizes are A4 ☐, B5 ☐, and 8.5" × 11" ☐.
 - Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and ×1.0 magnification is selected automatically.
 - Be sure not to select [Top] as binding direction on the Output Application Screen.
- 9 Press [Start] on the control panel.
 - Scanned image will be stored into memory. Repeat this procedure to complete scanning all originals.
 - When scanning from the original glass, Non-Image Area Erase and Image Centering are automatically selected.
 - Be sure to keep the ADF open throughout the scanning job.
- 10 When all originals are scanned, touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.
- 11 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

 The machine will start printing when ready for output.

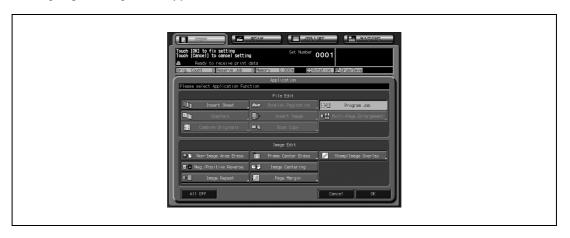


11.8 Programming different settings for an output job: Program job

In the ordinary Separate Scan mode, the combined features selected for the job are applied to all originals to be scanned. Using Program Job, you may scan multiple sets of originals and apply different settings on each set (referred to as job), then output them all as a complete set.



- ✓ Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.
- Output mode and print quantity setting cannot be specified for each job. The last setting made will be applied to all jobs.
- ✓ The paper size specified for the first job will be applied to all subsequent jobs.
- ✓ Max. 100 jobs can be programmed for an output job.
- ✔ Program Job settings cannot be stored in Program Memory.
- Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Program Job] on the Application Screen.



The incompatible function keys will be dimmed to show inactivity.

4 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Program Job] key displayed under the [Application] key.

This key can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

The [Separate Scan] key on the Copy Screen also appears highlighted to show that the Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.

- 5 Select additional copy conditions, as desired.
 - The paper size determined at this time will be applied to all subsequent jobs.

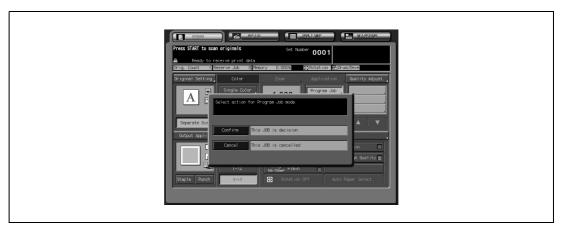
11-26 bizhub PRO C5501



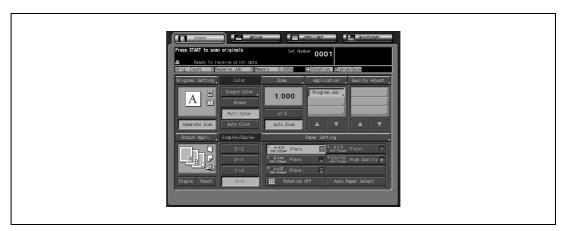
6 Press [Start] to start scanning.

When scanning for the current job is completed, the popup menu will be displayed to ask you whether or not to store the scanned image data as a job for printing in specified copy conditions.

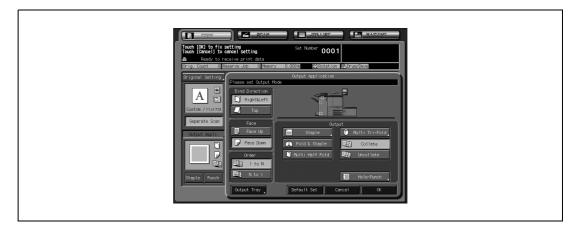
- Touch [Decision] to store the current job images.
 - To delete the scanned images, touch [Cancel].



- 8 Repeat above steps until all job originals are scanned.
- 9 When all originals are scanned, touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.



- 10 Touch [Output Appli.] to display the Output Application Screen, then select the desired output mode.
 - The setting made at this time will be applied to all subsequent jobs.



- 11 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad.
 - Entered quantity will be the count of complete set.



12 Press [Start].

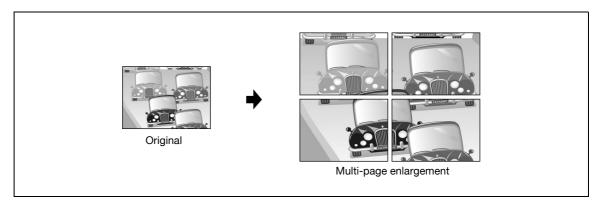
The machine will start printing in conditions specified for each job.

11-28 bizhub PRO C5501



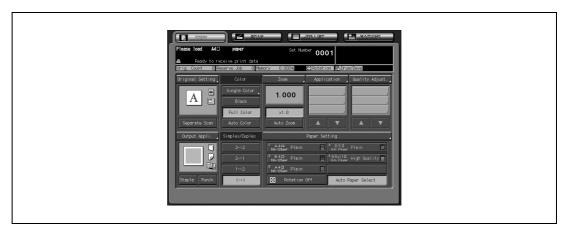
11.9 Dividing an image for enlarged copy: Multi-page enlargement

Use this function to make an enlarged copy, made up of several copied pages divided and enlarged from an original image.



- Use the original glass to scan.
- ✓ Use Auto Paper Select, or select the desired paper size on the Copy Screen. If Auto Paper Select is used, the largest paper size will be selected automatically.
- ✓ The output size can be selected (standard size) or determined when a magnification ratio is entered on the screen.
- 1 Position the original on the original glass, then close the ADF or original cover.

 The machine will detect the original size placed on the original glass.
- Select the desired paper size on the Copy Screen.
 - Touch the desired tray key to highlight it.

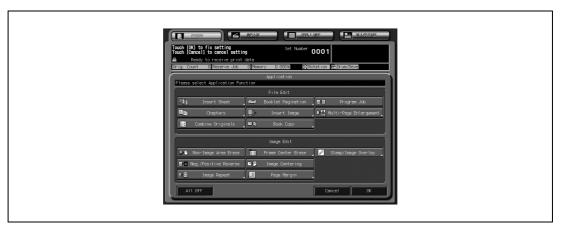


If Auto Paper Select is selected (initial setting), the largest paper size loaded in a tray will be selected automatically.

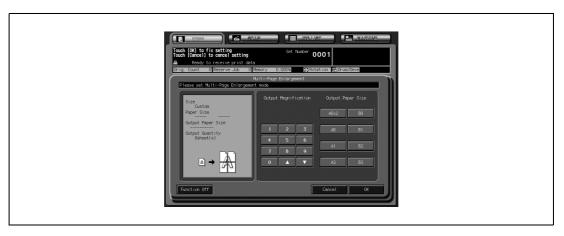
3 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.



4 Touch [Multi-Page Enlargement] on the Application Screen.



- 5 Select an output paper size or magnification, as desired.
 - To select an output paper size:
 Touch the desired size key to highlight it.
 - To select a magnification ratio:
 Use the touch panel keypad or [▲]/[▼] to specify the desired magnification ratio.



- 6 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Multi-Page Enlargement function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Multi Enlarge.] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

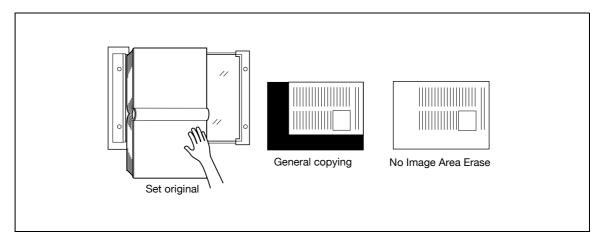
Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.

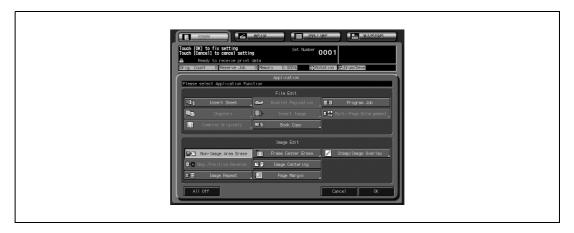
11-30 bizhub PRO C5501

11.10 Erasing outside area of original: Non-image area erase

Using this function, the machine will automatically detect the original size placed on the original glass, then make a copy eliminating the exposed glass area outside the borders of the original.



- ✓ Scan the original from original glass. Be sure to keep the ADF open.
- \checkmark Original size should be larger than 3×3 cm.
- Position the original on original glass with the ADF or original cover kept open.
 - Do not close the ADF/original cover.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Non-Image Area Erase] on the Application Screen.



The incompatible function keys will be dimmed to show inactivity.

4 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Non-Image Area] key displayed under the [Application] key.

This key can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and $\times 1.0$ magnification is selected automatically. Available copy modes are 1->1 and 1->2. Selecting [1->2] will select [Separate Scan] automatically.

5 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.





Detail

Machine Administrator can set the machine to obtain the optimum copy result of Non-Image Area Erase by adjusting the density level of the original manually. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

Non-Image Area Erase may perform incorrectly if the lighting in the work place is directly over the original glass. In this case, consult your service representative about an appropriate place for installation.

11-32 bizhub PRO C5501

11.11 Reversing color in image: Neg./positive reverse

Use this function to reverse the positive image to the negative image and vice versa in the selected color mode.

- Single Color: Makes a reversed image in the selected single color.
- Black: Reverses the image from black-on-white to white-on-black, and vice versa
- Full Color: Copies in complementary colors of the four colors.
- Auto Color: Makes a reversed image according to the original image (detected as Full Color or Black).



- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Neg./Positive Reverse] on the Application Screen.



The incompatible function keys will be dimmed to show inactivity.

4 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Neg/Pos. Reverse] key displayed under the [Application] key.

This key can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

5 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.

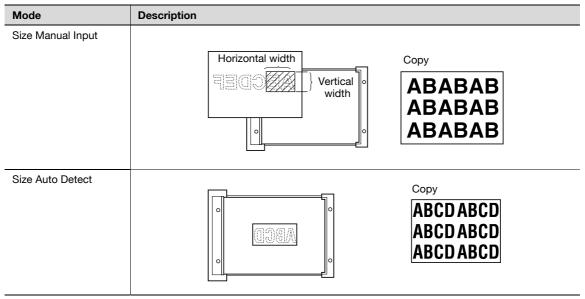


11.12 Repeating original image on one sheet: Image repeat

11.12.1 Setting repeat times automatically

Use the Size Manual Input mode to manually specify the scanning area of the original glass, then let the machine to print the scanned image repeatedly on one sheet of copy paper.

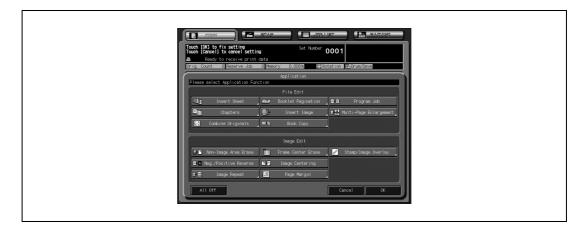
Size Auto Detect mode will automatically detect the original size (image and surrounding blank area also), then let the machine determine the number of repeats.



- ✓ Scan the original from original glass. The ADF cannot be used to scan the original.
- ✓ Use the Size Manual Input mode to repeat a part of the original, not the entire image, by specifying the scanning area.
- Size Auto Detect mode uses Non-Image Area Erase to automatically detect the original size with the ADF/original cover kept open.
- Position original on the original glass.
 - When selecting Size Manual Input, place the original facedown on the original glass so that the
 original image should fit within the area measured by vertical/horizontal width from the rear-left
 corner. Close the ADF/original cover gently.
 - When selecting Size Auto Detect, open the ADF/original cover, then place the original facedown on the original glass.
 In this case, Non-Image Area Erase is automatically selected. Be sure to keep the ADF/original cover
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.

open.

3 Touch [Image Repeat] on the Application Screen.



11-34 bizhub PRO C5501

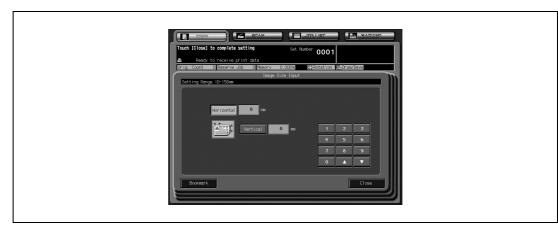


- 4 Make setting for Size Manual Input or Size Auto Detect, as desired.
 - To select Size Manual Input:
 Touch [Manual] to highlight it, then use [▲]/[▼] to specify the desired horizontal/vertical width.

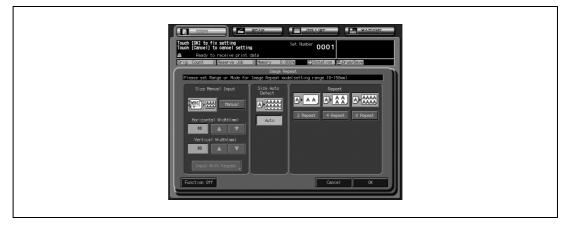


 If the touch panel keypad is desired, touch [Input With Keypad] to display the Image Size Input Screen

Touch [Horizontal] or [Vertical] to highlight it, then enter the desired horizontal/vertical width. Touch Close to complete the setting and return to the Image Repeat Screen.



 To select Size Auto Detect: Touch [Auto] to highlight it.



- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Image Repeat function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].



6 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Image Repeat] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and ×1.0 magnification is selected automatically. Available copy modes are 1->1 and 1->2. Selecting [1->2] will select [Separate Scan] automatically.

The Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



Detail

Using Size Auto Detect mode, Image Repeat may perform incorrectly if the lighting in the work place is directly over the original glass. In this case, consult your service representative about an appropriate place for installation.

You may find the [Bookmark] key at the lower-left corner of the Image Size Input Screen. Touch this key to highlight it, if desired, so that the screen may be directly accessed from the Copy Screen or Check Screen to change the setting you made.

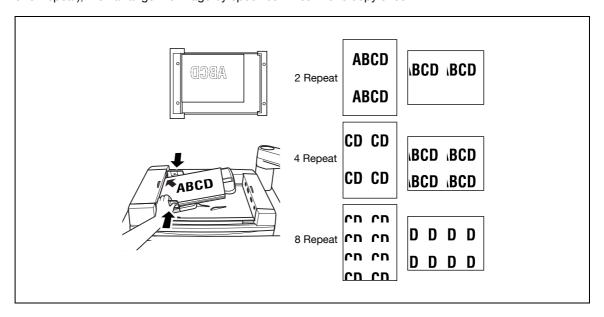
See page 13-3 for details.

11-36 bizhub PRO C5501

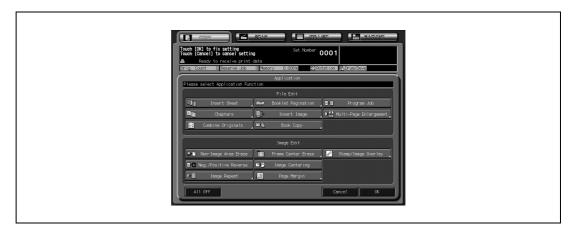


11.12.2 Specifying repeat times: Repeat

Repeat mode will scan the image area specified by the selected paper size and mode (2 Repeat, 4 Repeat, or 8 Repeat), then arrange the image by specified times in one copy sheet.

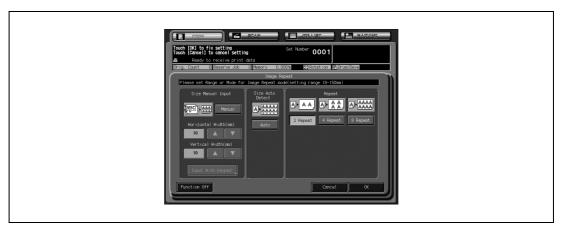


- ✓ Magnification ratio is fixed to ×1.0 (100%). Rotation becomes unavailable, if this magnification ratio is changed manually.
- The scanning area will be a portion of the selected paper size equally divided according to the selected mode.
- 1 Position the original.
 - Both ADF and original glass are available. The scanning area varies according to the selected paper size, original direction, and selected repeat mode.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Image Repeat] on the Application Screen.





- 4 Select the desired Repeat mode.
 - Touch [2 Repeat], [4 Repeat], or [8 Repeat] to highlight it.



- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Image Repeat function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 6 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Image Repeat] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and ×1.0 magnification is selected automatically. Available copy modes are 1->1 and 1->2. Selecting [1->2] will select [Separate Scan] automatically.

7 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.

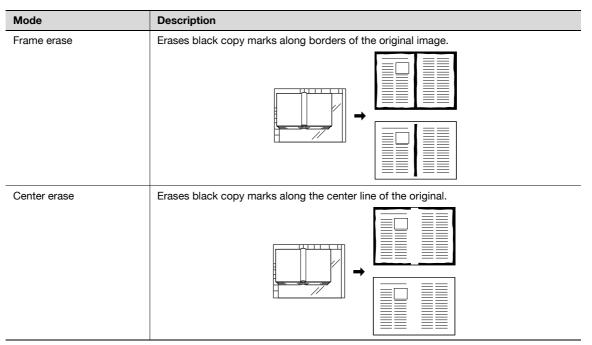
11-38 bizhub PRO C5501



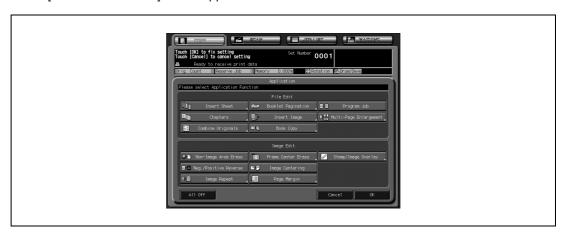
11.13 Eliminating copy marks along borders: Frame center erase

When the original is scanned from the original glass, black copy marks may be produced along borders and center line, and also around punch holes.

Use this function to eliminate them from the copies and lower the toner consumption at the same time.



- ✓ Available range for the Frame erase amount is 1 to 300 mm, for the Center erase amount is 1 to 99 mm, in 1 mm increments.
- ✓ Frame erase and Center erase can be used in combination.
- ✓ The Frame erase amount can be specified both collectively for all four sides and individually for each side.
- Position the original.
 - Both ADF and original glass are available.
 When lowering the ADF/original cover onto thick original (e.g. open book), do not press it down too hard. Keep the ADF/original cover open, if required.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- Touch [Frame Center Erase] on the Application Screen.





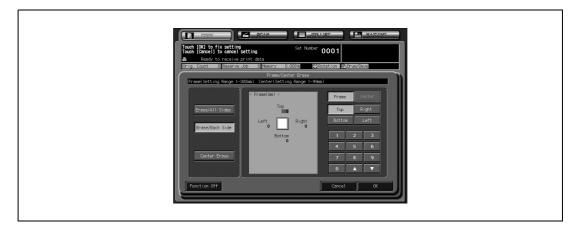
- 4 Touch [Erase/All Sides], [Erase/Each Side], or [Center Erase] to highlight it.
 - Use Frame erase and Center erase in combination, if desired.



- 5 Specify the erasure amount for the selected mode.
 - To specify the erase amount for Erase/All Sides:
 Confirm that all the frame erase amounts in the illustration are highlighted.
 Use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired erase amount.



To specify the erase amount for Erase/Each Side:
 Touch the desired side key on the right side of the screen to highlight the erase amount in the illustration, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired erase amount.



11-40 bizhub PRO C5501



To specify the erase amount for Center Erase:
 Confirm that the center erase amount in the illustration is highlighted. If not, touch [Center] on the right side of the screen to highlight it.
 Use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired erase amount.



- Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Frame Center Erase function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Frame/Fold] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

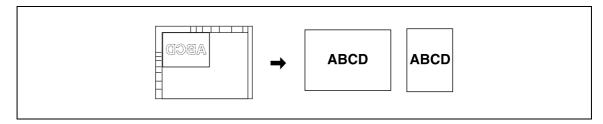
Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.

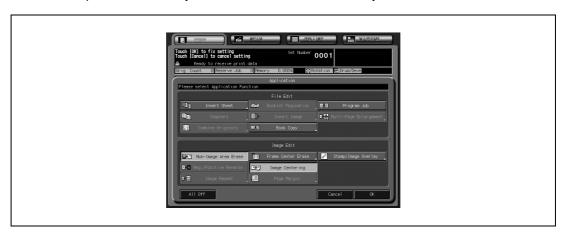


11.14 Copying image in the center of copy paper: Image centering

Use this function to detect the image area of the original and center the whole image on copy paper.



- Position the original.
 - Both ADF and original glass are available.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Image Centering] on the Application Screen.
 - The incompatible function keys will be dimmed to show inactivity.



- Non-Image Area Erase will be selected automatically. If using ADF to scan the original, touch it to deselect this function.
- If Book Copy is used in combination, the original smaller than the selected paper size will be printed in the center of the copy paper without image division performed.
- 4 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Non-Image Area] and [Image Centering] keys displayed under the [Application] key.

These keys can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and $\times 1.0$ magnification is selected automatically. Available copy modes are 1->1 and 1->2. Selecting [1->2] will select [Separate Scan] automatically.

5 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



Reminder

Image Centering may perform incorrectly if the lighting in the work place is directly over the original glass. In this case, consult your service representative about an appropriate place for installation.

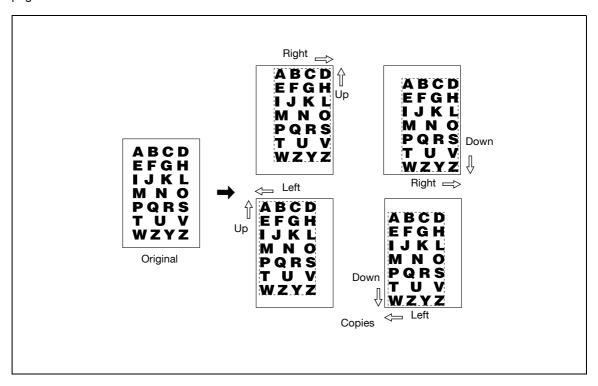
11-42 bizhub PRO C5501

11.15 Adjusting position of copy image: Page margin - Shift

Use this function to create a binding margin on copies in order to make it easier for filing purposes, and also to adjust the position of copy image on both front and back sides when making double-sided copies, in order to correct the image dislocation.

Page Space function is available only when Booklet Pagination or 2 Repeat mode of Image Repeat has been already selected. Use this function to make the desired amount of blank space between the two images on a page.

If image loss is likely, see "Reducing images to create binding margin: Page margin - Reduce & Shift" on page 11-46.



- ✔ Available shift direction: Top, Bottom, Right, Left
- ✓ Shift amount: 0 to 250 mm in 1 mm increments
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Page Margin] on the Application Screen.

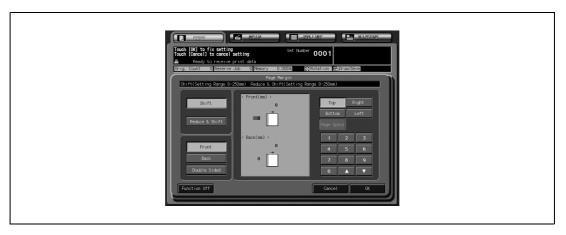




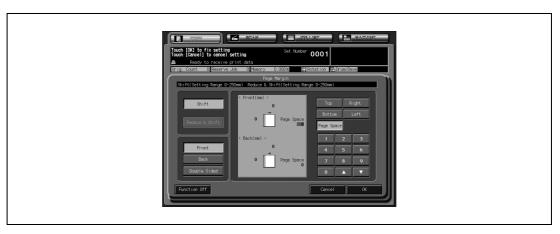
4 Touch [Shift].



- 5 Select the side of copy paper to be adjusted with image position.
 - Touch [Front], [Back], or [Double Sided] to highlight it.



- Making single-sided copies, only the front side setting will be effective.
- To have the same shift amount on both sides of double-sided copies, select [Double Sided].
- To specify the page space amount, touch [Page Space].



- 6 Specify the shift direction and amount.
 - Use [Top] or [Bottom] to shift the image in lengthwise direction, and [Right] or [left] in widthwise direction. Touch the desired shift direction key to highlight it, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired shift amount. For entering the page space amount, shift direction is not needed to be specified.
 - Setting the shift amount in 0.1 mm increments is also available by User/Administrator setting. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.
- Repeat the steps 5 and 6, if setting the shift amount for front and back sides individually.

11-44 bizhub PRO C5501



- 8 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Page Margin function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 9 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Page Margin] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

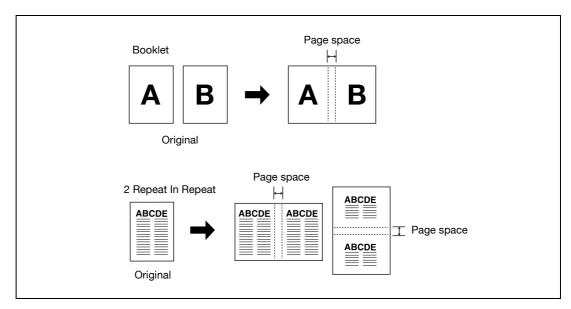
10 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



Note

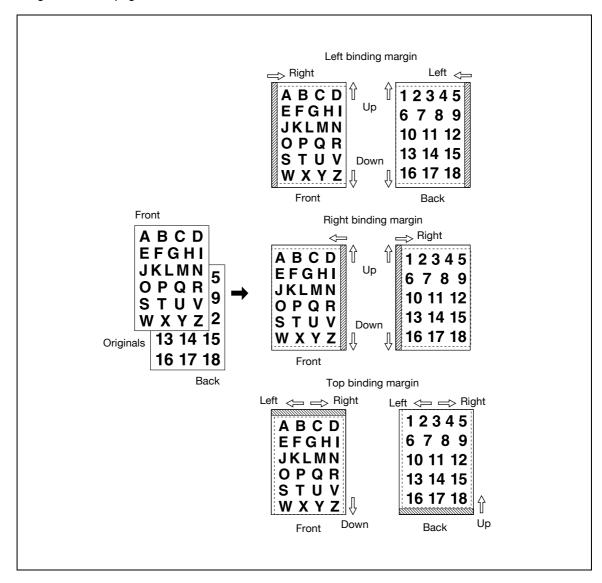
Page Space function is available only when Booklet Pagination or 2 Repeat mode of Image Repeat has been already selected. Use this function to make the desired amount of blank space between the two images on a page.



11.16 Reducing images to create binding margin: Page margin - Reduce & Shift

Use this function instead of Shift to prevent image loss when creating a binding margin.

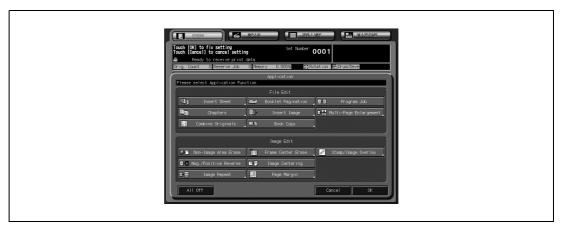
To create a binding margin without reducing the original image, see "Adjusting position of copy image: Page margin - Shift" on page 11-43.



- Auto Zoom is automatically selected and cannot released. Reduction ratio will depend on the specified shift amount.
- ✓ Shift amount: 0 to 250 mm in 1 mm increments

11-46 bizhub PRO C5501

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Page Margin] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Reduce & Shift].



- 5 Select the side of copy paper to be adjusted with image position.
 - Touch [Front] or [Back] to highlight it.
 - Auto Zoom will automatically determine the reduction ratio according to the shift amount specified for the front page. Setting for the back page is not required normally because the shift amount and reduction ratio determined for the front page will be automatically applied to the back page.
- 6 Specify the shift direction and amount.
 - Use [Top] or [Bottom] to shift the image in lengthwise direction, and [Right] or [left] in widthwise direction. Touch the desired shift direction key to highlight it, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired shift amount.
 - Setting the shift amount in 0.1 mm increments is also available in the Utility mode.
- Repeat the steps 5 and 6, if setting the shift amount for front and back sides individually.
- 8 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Page Margin function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 9 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Page Margin] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

10 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17 Printing additional information: Stamp/image overlay

This function allows you to print onto output copies the desired type of built-in stamp, numbering for multiple sets, page number for multiple pages, date/time, watermark, watermark numbering, and copy protect.

The following seven modes are provided for the Stamp function. See page 11-73 for details on using these modes in combination.

Mode	Description
Built-in Stamp	
	URGENT
	CONFIDENTIAL
	IMPORTANT
Set Numbering	
	002 / 005
Page No.	
	P1
	1-1
	1/5
Date/Time	
	'07/1/23 1:23PM
Watermark	
vaternark	A
	Control Control

11-48 bizhub PRO C5501

Mode	Description
Set Numbering (Watermark)	001/100 001/100 001/100 001/100 001/100 001/100

The above six modes are provided with following detailed settings. For details, see page 11-64.

- Fine adjustment for printed position
- Start number setting for Set Numbering mode
- Start number setting for Page No. mode
- Character size/type setting for Page No. and Date/Time modes
- Cover/Insert print setting for Page No.
- Color setting

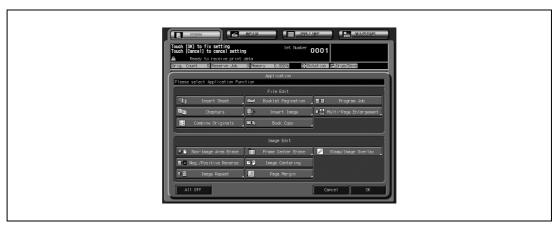
Mode	Description		
Mode Copy Protect	Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy	Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy	Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy



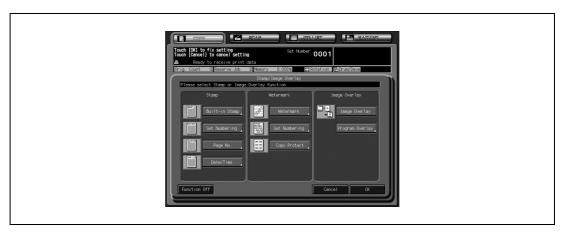
11.17.1 Printing stamp onto copies: Built-in stamp

Print the desired letter type selected from preset stamps onto the specified position of copies.

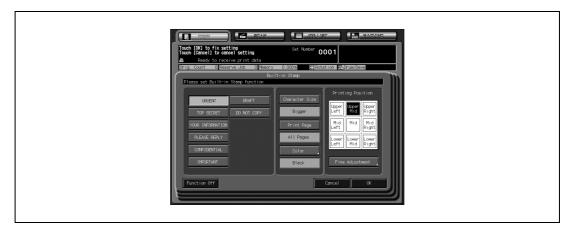
- ✓ To use this function, the optional HDD (HD-506) is required to be installed in the machine.
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Built-in Stamp].



- 5 Select the desired stamp type, printing position, character size, print page and color.
 - Touch one of the twelve stamp type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the nine printing position keys to highlight it. If fine adjustment is desired, touch [Fine Adjustment]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - Touch [Character Size] to select Larger or Smaller.
 - Touch [Print Page] to select Cover Only or All Pages.
 - For selecting the stamp color, see page 11-66.



11-50 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

8 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

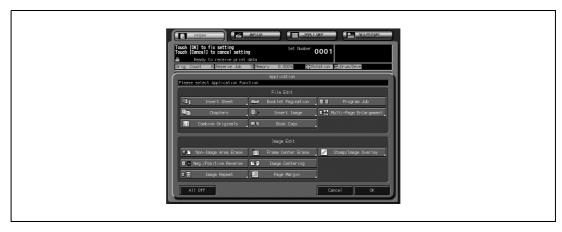
The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17.2 Printing distribution number: Set numbering

Print a distribution number onto the specified position of copies.

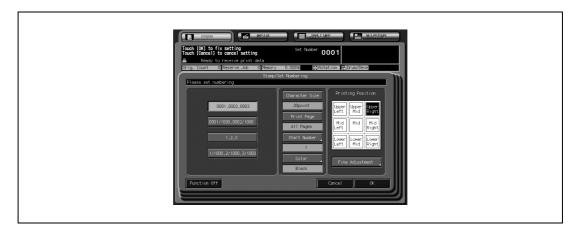
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Set Numbering].



- 5 Select the desired numbering type, printing position, character size, print page, start number, and color.
 - Touch one of the four numbering type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the nine printing position keys to highlight it. If fine adjustment is desired, touch [Fine Adjustment]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - Touch [Character Size] to select 20 point or 36 point.
 - Touch [Print Page] to select Cover Only or All Pages.
 - To specify the start number, touch [Start Number]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - For selecting the stamp color, see page 11-66.



11-52 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

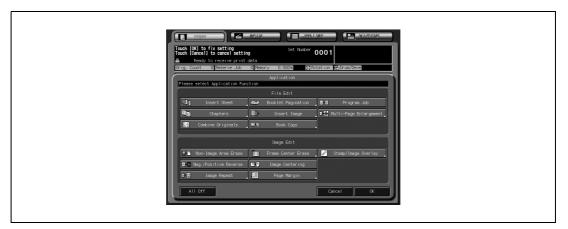
The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17.3 Printing page number: Page no.

Print a page number onto the specified position of copies.

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



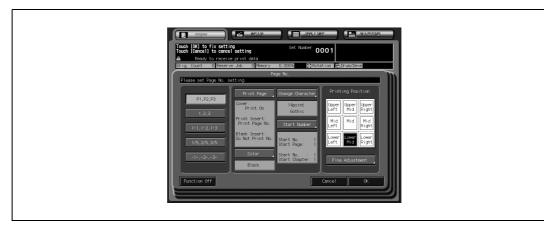
4 Touch [Page No.].



11-54 bizhub PRO C5501



- Select the desired page numbering type, printing position, print page, color, character size/type, and start number.
 - Touch one of the five page numbering type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the nine printing position keys to highlight it. If fine adjustment is desired, touch [Fine Adjustment]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - Touch [Print Page] to designate whether to print the page number on the front/back cover or insertions. See page 11-66 for details.
 - For selecting the stamp color, see page 11-66.
 - Touch [Change Character] to select the character size and type. See page 11-65 for details.
 - To specify the start number, touch [Start Number]. See page 11-65 for details.



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.
 - The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.
 - Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.
- Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

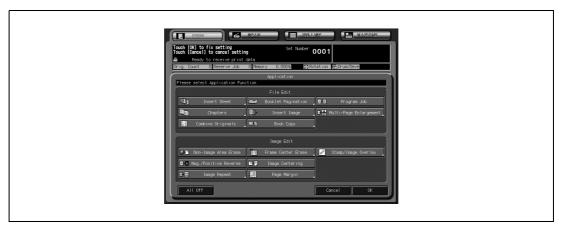
 The machine will start printing when ready for output.



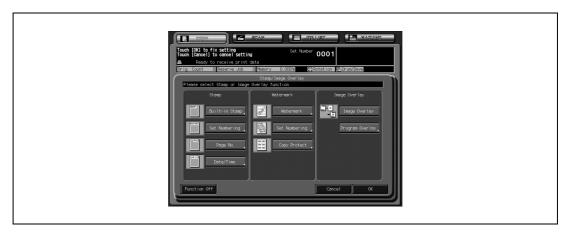
11.17.4 Printing date/time: Date/time

Print date and time onto the specified position of copies.

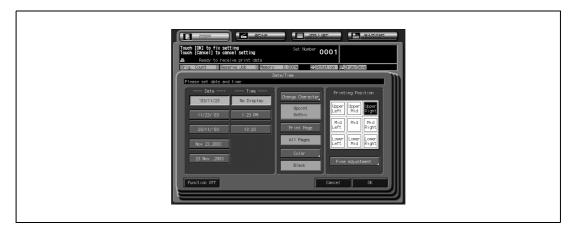
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Date/Time].



- 5 Select the desired date/time type, printing position, character size/type, print page, and color.
 - Touch one of the five date type keys and one of the three time type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the nine printing position keys to highlight it. If fine adjustment is desired, touch [Fine Adjustment]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - Touch [Change Character] to select the character size and type. See page 11-65 for details.
 - Touch [Print Page] to select Cover Only or All Pages.
 - For selecting the stamp color, see page 11-66.



11-56 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

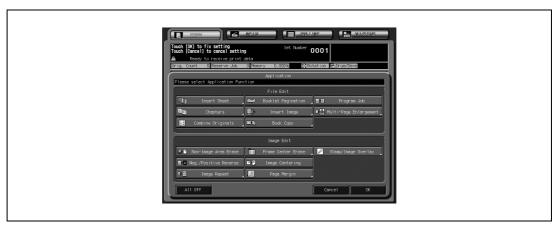
The machine will start printing when ready for output.



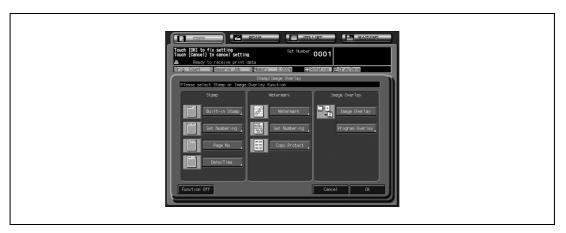
11.17.5 Printing watermark onto copies: Watermark

Print the desired letter type selected from preset watermarks in the center of printed page background.

- ✓ To use this function, the optional HDD (HD-506) is required to be installed in the machine.
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Watermark].



- 5 Select the desired watermark type, color, and text density.
 - Touch one of the twelve watermark type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the seven color keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the four text density keys to highlight it.
 - If fine adjustment of the centered watermark position is required, touch [Fine Adjustment]. See page 11-64 for details.



11-58 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

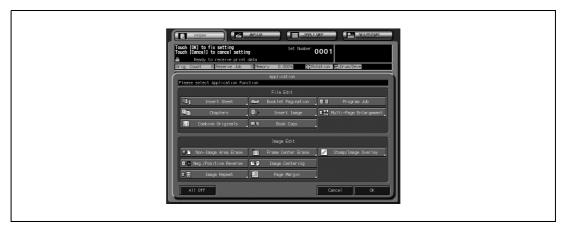
The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17.6 Printing distribution number as watermark: Set numbering

Print a distribution number in the specified form repeatedly over the scanned image.

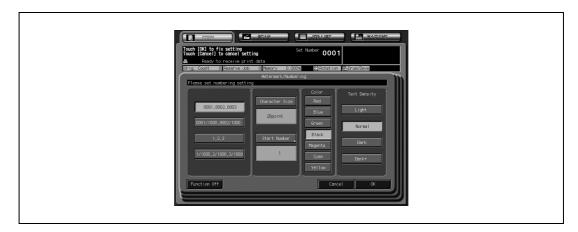
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



4 Touch [Set Numbering] in the Watermark area.



- 5 Select the desired watermark numbering type, character size, start number, color, and text density.
 - Touch one of the four numbering type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch [Character Size] to select 20 point or 36 point.
 - To specify the start number, touch [Start Number]. See page 11-64 for details.
 - Touch one of the seven color keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the four text density keys to highlight it.



11-60 bizhub PRO C5501



- 6 Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

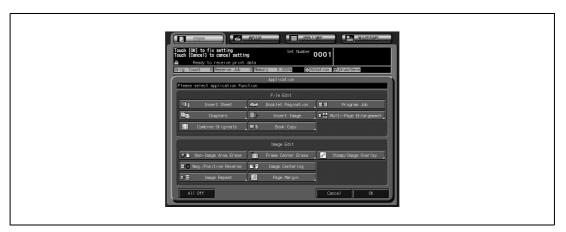
The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17.7 Printing watermark and background pattern: Copy protect

Print both watermark and background pattern onto copies. Use this function for preparing the original with letters such as "Invalid" printed, in order to prevent illegal copy or leakage of secret information.

- ✓ To use this function, the optional HDD (HD-506) is required to be installed in the machine.
- Select the desired type for both watermark and background pattern. Alternative printing of these two is unavailable.
- ✓ Select the desired watermark/pattern color from black, magenta, and cyan.
- ✓ The watermark and background pattern always print in 100% magnification, while the original image is enlarged/reduced/combined.
- ✓ The character size of watermark is 44 points.
- ✔ Printed position of watermark is the same as of Set Numbering of Watermark.
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



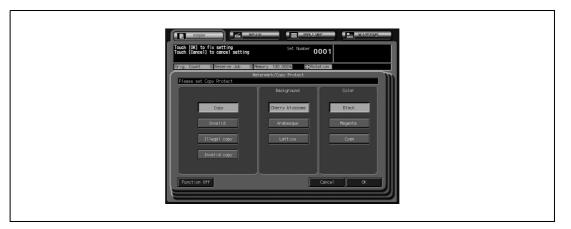
4 Touch [Copy Protect] in the Watermark area.



11-62 bizhub PRO C5501



- 5 Select the desired watermark type, background pattern, and color.
 - Touch one of the four watermark type keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the three background pattern keys to highlight it.
 - Touch one of the three color keys to highlight it.



- Touch [OK] twice to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 7 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

Use this key to jump to the subsequent screen to make any setting change.

8 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



11.17.8 Detailed setting in stamp/watermark

Making fine adjustment on printing position

Use this function to make fine adjustment on printing position of Built-in Stamp, Set Numbering, Page No., and Date/Time. The adjustment range is 0 to 50 mm, in lengthwise direction ([Top] or [Bottom]) and in widthwise direction ([Right] or [left]).



- Touch the desired direction key to highlight it, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired amount.
- 2 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.

Setting start number in set numbering

Touching [Start Number] on the Set Numbering Screen will display the following screen to allow you to specify the start number.



- 1 Use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired start number. Up to four digits can be specified.
- 2 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.

11-64 bizhub PRO C5501



Setting start number in page no.

Touching [Start Number] on the Page No. Screen will display the following screen to allow you to specify the start number and page to be started with page numbering.

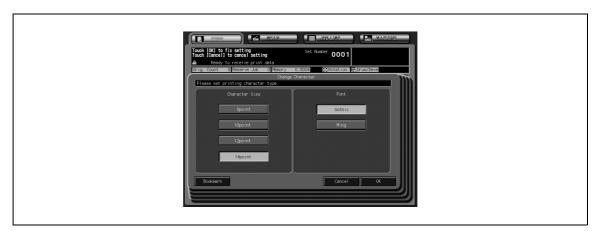
If Chapters is already selected, chapter start number and the chapter to be started with chapter numbering can also be specified on this screen.



- Touch [Start Number] under Page No. to highlight it, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired start number. Up to four digits can be specified.
- 2 Touch [Start Page] under Page No. to highlight it, then enter the desired start page.
- 3 Touch [Start Number] under Chapter to highlight it, then use [▼] and [▲], or touch panel keypad to enter the desired start number. Up to two digits can be specified.
- 4 Touch [Start Chapter] under Chapter to highlight it, then enter the desired start chapter.
- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.

Selecting character size/type

Use this function to specify the character size and type for Page No., and Date/Time.

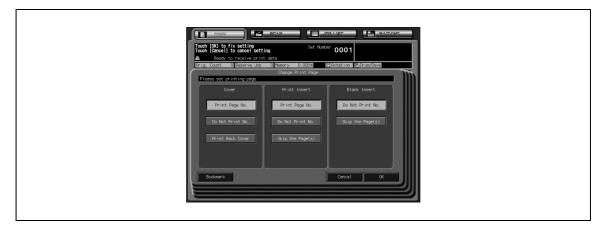


- 1 Touch one of the four keys under Character Size to highlight it.
- 2 Touch either [Gothic] or [Ming] under Font to highlight it.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.



Setting print page in page no.

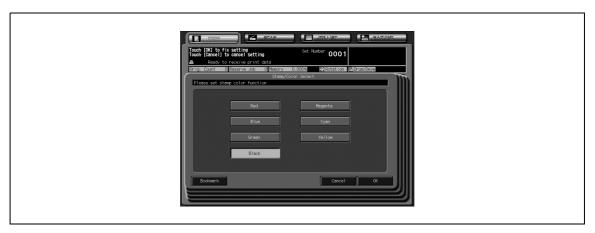
This function allows you to print the page number on the front cover and insertions, if Print/Blank Insert Paper mode of Insert Sheet has already been selected.



- 1 Touch one of the three keys under Cover to highlight it.
- Select one of the keys under Print Insert if Print mode has been specified, or one of the two under Blank Insert for Blank mode.
- 3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.

Selecting color

Use this function to select the desired color in Built-in Stamp, Set Numbering, Page No., and Date/Time.

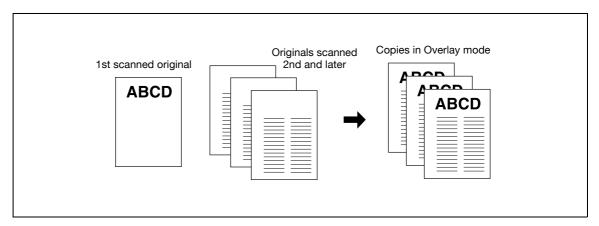


- 1 Touch one of the seven color keys to highlight it.
- 2 Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the previous screen.

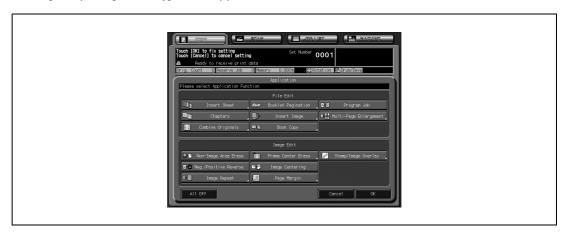
11-66 bizhub PRO C5501

11.18 Overlaying image onto printed pages: Image overlay

Use this function to scan an image, then overlay the image onto each page copied in the job.



- 1 Position the overlaying original.
 - Position a sheet of original faceup in the ADF or facedown on the original glass.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.



- 4 Touch [Image Overlay] to highlight it.
- 5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 6 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

This key can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

Auto Zoom and Auto Paper Select are released and ×1.0 magnification is selected automatically. The [Separate Scan] key on the Copy Screen also appears highlighted to show that the Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.

- 7 Select any other copy conditions, as desired.
- 8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

The original image will be scanned into memory.

- 9 Position the original to be overlaid.
 - Position the original either in the ADF or on the original glass.



- 10 Press [Start] to scan.
 - Repeat steps 9 and 10 for all originals.
- 11 Touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.
- 12 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

 The machine will start printing when ready for output.

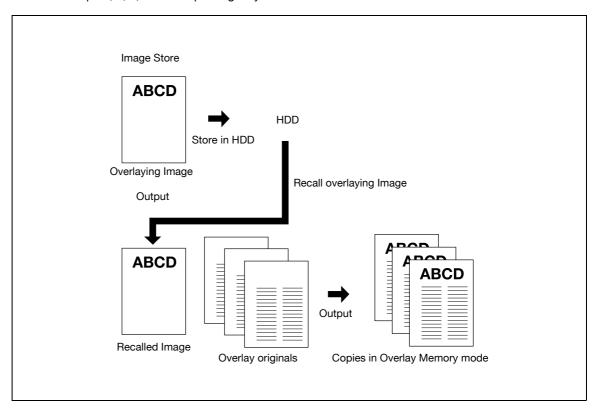
11-68 bizhub PRO C5501

11.19 Storing overlay image in HDD/overlaying image stored in HDD: Program overlay

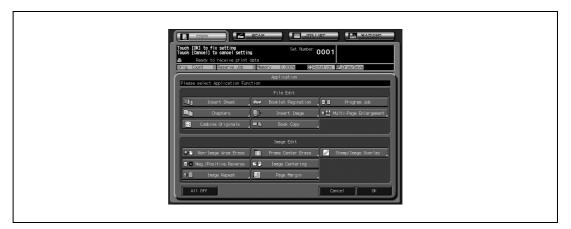
Use Program Overlay to scan and store several images in HDD, then recall the desired image from the HDD to overlay onto each page copied in the job.

To use this function, the optional HDD (HD-506) is required to be installed in the machine.

Follow the steps 1, 2, 3, and 9 for printing only.

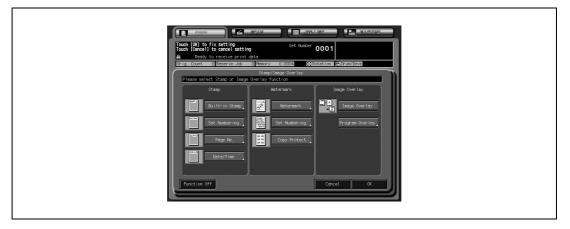


- 1 Position the overlaying original facedown on the original glass.
- 2 Touch [Application] on the Copy Screen.
- 3 Touch [Stamp/Image Overlay] on the Application Screen.





4 Touch [Program Overlay].



The Image Store/Recall Screen will be displayed.

Proceed to step 9 for recalling the image already stored in HDD.

5 Touch [Store].



6 Enter the desired image name to be stored.



 Use the touch screen keypad to enter the desired name up to 8 characters. The date when making this entry will be stored automatically.

7 Touch [OK].

The Copy Screen to store the overlaying image will be displayed.

Select copy conditions, as desired.

If a popup menu is displayed to prompt you that the entered image name has been already used, see page 11-72.

11-70 bizhub PRO C5501

8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

The following screen will be displayed to indicate that the machine is now storing the image data in HDD

When completed, the Image Store/Recall Screen will be restored.

Select the desired overlaying image data.



- Touch the desired image data key to highlight it, then touch [OK].
 The Stamp/Image Overlay Screen will be restored.
- 10 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Stamp/Image Overlay function with the current setting remained, touch [Function Off].
- 11 Touch [OK] on the Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored, with highlighted [Stamp/Overlay] key displayed under the [Application] key.

This key can also be used to display the Application Screen for making setting change.

The [Separate Scan] key on the Copy Screen also appears highlighted to show that the Separate Scan mode is automatically selected.

- 12 Position the original to be overlaid.
 - Position the original either in the ADF or on the original glass.
- 13 Press [Start] to scan.
 - Repeat steps 12 and 13 for all originals.
- 14 Touch [Separate Scan] to exit the Separate Scan mode.
- 15 Enter the desired print quantity from the control panel keypad, then press [Start].

The machine will start printing when ready for output.



Popup menu for name duplication

If the entered name is duplicated, the popup menu will be displayed instead of the Copy Screen.



If both [OK] and [Cancel] keys are displayed, the image with the entered name applied can be overwritten. Touch [Cancel] to overwrite the existing image data. To store the new data with a new name, touch [OK].



If the popup menu shows [OK] only, the existing image data cannot be overwritten. Touch [OK] to enter a new name.

Either of the above two can be specified in the Administrator setting.

11-72 bizhub PRO C5501



11.20 Copy conditions incompatible with application functions

												Е	Bas	ic										
																			0	rigi	nal	Se	ttin	g
																				ind	Г	ire	otic	<u></u>
																			Dire	ction	Ľ	1100	JUIC	"
Сор	oy Conditions Incompatible with Application Functions	1>1	1>2	2>1	2>2	Using Original Glass	Using ADF	Separate Scan	Full Color	Black	Single Color	Gray Scale	Auto Color	APS	AMS	1.000 Magnification	Zoom	Rotation	Right & Left Binding	Upper Binding	Normal	Left	UpsideDown	Right
	Insert Sheet					*1						С		0										
	Cover Sheet (PI)											С												
	Chapter	0		0		*1						С												
_	Chapter (Print Insertion)	0		0		*1						С		0										
E	Combine Originals					*1						С	0	0				0						
	Booklet Pagination	0		0		*1						С	0	0				0						
E E	Insert Image					0						С												
	Book Copy											С		0	0									
	Program Job (each job)											С												
	Program Job (after combined)	ш	Ε	Е	Ε				Ε	Ε	Е	O	Ε		Е	Ш	Е	Ε	E	Е	Ε	ш	Е	Е
	Multi-Page Enlargement		0	0	0		0					С		*4	*4	*4	*4							
اڃا	Non-Image Area Erase			0	0		*					С		0										
∺	Image Centering						*19					О		0	0									
<u> iii</u>	Neg-/ Positive Reverse											С												
Application	Page Margin (Shift)											О												
∢	Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)											С		0		0	0							
_	Image Repeat			0	0		*					С		0	0									
E	Image Repeat (Auto)			0	0		*					С		0	0									
	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)											С		0	0									
mage	Frame Erasure											С												
<u> </u> <u> </u>	Center Erase											С												
	Stamp											С												
	Watermark											С												
	Copy Protect											С	0											
	Image Overlay											С	0											
	Program Overlay											С	0											
	Storing an Overlay Image		0	0	0	Α	0	0				С						0						



_			_											Ba	sic											_
			\vdash						_	ric	nc		ettir		SIC							-	O+1-	ners		_
			┝	Luca				т.		rig					-1		_	· ·		_				iers	$\overline{}$	_
			Щ	lma	age	,	_	ту	ре	_	2	bec	ial	Ini	CKN	ess		اد	ze	_			Ġ.	L		
0	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Application Functions Insert Sheet Cover Sheet (PI)		Text/Photo	Photo	Text	Map	Printed	PhotoPaper	Copied	Inkjet	Normal		Z-Fold Original	Normal	Thick	Thin	Standard	Custom Size	Custom Size (Full Area)		After Proof Copy	Separate Scan (during scanning)	Interrupt Copy (When Current comp.)	Interrupt Copy (Stop Immediately)	IP Scanner	Reserve Job
												0								0						
		Cover Sheet (PI)																	Г						П	П
		Chapter										0							Г	0					П	П
	e Edit	Chapter (Print Insertion)										0								0						
		Combine Originals										0							0	0					П	П
		Booklet Pagination										0							0	0					П	П
	l≓	Insert Image										0								0						
	_	Book Copy										0							0	0						\Box
		Program Job (each job)										0							\blacksquare							
		Program Job (after combined)	Ε	Е	Е	Е	Ε	Е	Е	Е	Ε	Е	Е	Е	Е	Е	Е	Е	Ε	Е						П
		Multi-Page Enlargement										0	0						0	0						\Box
_		Non-Image Area Erase										0	0						0	0						П
Application		Image Centering										0	0												П	П
<u> 2</u>		Neg-/ Positive Reverse	П																Г						П	П
ᇢ		Page Margin (Shift)	П									Т							0					П	П	Г
¥		Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	П									0							Ō						П	$\overline{}$
		Image Repeat	П									Ō	0						Ė						П	$\overline{}$
	Edit	Image Repeat (Auto)	П									0	0						Т	0				П	П	Г
	Ш	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	П									Ō	Ō											П	П	П
	mage	Frame Erasure	П					П				Ē							Г					П	П	П
	Ĕ	Center Erase	П					П							П									П	П	П
	-	Stamp	П					П	П						П	П	П	П	Г	П	П	П		П	П	\Box
		Watermark																							П	
		Copy Protect	П					П	П			0			П	П	П	П		П	П	П		П	\sqcap	\Box
		Image Overlay	П					П	П			ŏ			П	П	П	П		П	П	П		П	П	
		Program Overlay																							П	
		Storing an Overlay Image										0	0							0			0	0	П	

11-74 bizhub PRO C5501

Г			Е	Bas	ic				С	olo	or A	ιdjι	ıstr	nei	nt					-	\pp	lica	tio	<u> </u>	\neg
			0	the	rs							Γ						П			File	eЕ	dit	_	\neg
	Сор	y Conditions Incompatible with Application Functions	Without ADF	Coin Vendor (parallel)	Coin Vendor (serial/card management)	Copy Density	Adjust Background	B-Side Prevent	RGB Adjustment	Hue	Saturation	Brightness	Screen	Sharpness	Contrast	Distinction	Color Balance	Glossy	Insert Sheet	Cover Sheet (PI)	Chapter	Chapter (Print Insertion)	Combine Originals	Booklet Pagination	Olnsert Image
\vdash	П	Insert Sheet	c	c	c	Ť	_	_	_		-	_	-	<u> </u>	Ť		Ť	Ť	↸	Ť	Ť	Ť	Ŏ	<u></u>	ᇹ
1		Cover Sheet (PI)	Ĉ	Ĉ	Ĉ			Н	\vdash		\vdash	\vdash	\vdash		\vdash			Н	\vdash	$\overline{}$	\vdash	Н	Ť	Ħ	Ť
1		Chapter	С	c	c						Т	Т			Т			Г		\vdash	abla		0	\Box	0
1		Chapter (Print Insertion)	С	С	С			Г	Т		Г	Г			Г			Г			Ь,	$\overline{}$	Ō	0	Ō
1	뜶	Combine Originals	С	С	С			Г	Т		Т	Т			Т			Г	0	T	0	ि	abla	0	0
1	ĮŪ,	Booklet Pagination	С	С	С													П	0			0	O	N	П
1	Elle	Insert Image	С	С	C			Г	Г		Г	Г			Г			Г	0		0		0	门	abla
1	_	Book Copy	С	С	С			Г			Г	Г			Г			Г	0		Г		0	П	0
1		Program Job (each job)	С	С	С			Г				Г			Г				0		0		0	0	0
1		Program Job (after combined)	С	С	С	Е	Е	E	Ε	Е	E	E	Ε	Е	E	Е	Ε	E	0		0	0	0		Ō
1		Multi-Page Enlargement	С	С	С														0	0	0	0			0
اچ		Non-Image Area Erase	С	С	С														0		0	0	0	0	0
Application		Image Centering	С	С	С														0						0
≌		Neg-/ Positive Reverse	С	С	О																				
lg.		Page Margin (Shift)	С	С	О																				
<		Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	С	С	С																				
1	Ļ	Image Repeat	С	С	С														0	0	0				0
1		Image Repeat (Auto)	С	С	С														0	0	0				0
1	В	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	С	С	О																0	0	0	0	0
1	mage	Frame Erasure	С	С	С																				
1	트	Center Erase	С	С	O																				
1		Stamp	С	С	С																		*7	Ш	
1		Watermark	С	С	C			L	_		_	_	L		_			Ш			_		*7	Ш	\Box
		Copy Protect	С	С	С		L	_	匚	_	oxdot	oxdot	匚		oxdot			Ш	L	L	$oxed{oxed}$	Ш	*7	Ш	
1		Image Overlay	С	С	С	_	_	_	<u> </u>	_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	_	<u> </u>	_	_	Щ	0	0	<u> </u>	╙	0	Ш	0
		Program Overlay	С	С	C		_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	L	_	<u> </u>		L	L	L	L	L	L	*7	Ш	
1	1	Storing an Overlay Image	С	С	С	ĺ		l	ı	ĺ	ı	l	0	ĺ	l		ĺ	0	0	0	10	0	0	0	0



											Αp	plio	cati												utp		\neg
			F	ile	Ed	it							lm	age	e E	dit							Α	pp	lica	atio	n
C	бор	y Conditions Incompatible with Application Functions	Book Copy	O Program Job (each job)	o Program Job (after combined)	○ Multi-Page Enlargement	O Non-Image Area Erase	O Image Centering	Neg-/ Positive Reverse	Page Margin (Shift)	Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	Image Repeat	Image Repeat (Auto)	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	Frame Erasure	Center Erase	Stamp	Watermark	Copy Protect	Image Overlay	Program Overlay	Storing an Overlay Image	Face Up	Face Down	1toN	Nto1	Collated
		Insert Sheet	0	0	С	0	0	0				0	0							0						П	П
		Cover Sheet (PI)			С	*																				П	П
		Chapter	Г	О	С	0	0		П	П		0	0	0							Г	Г	0	Т		П	П
		Chapter (Print Insertion)		0	С	0	0					0	Ö	0									0			П	П
	e Edit	Combine Originals	0	0	С	0	0					0	0	0			*7	*7	*7	0	*7					П	П
1 1	Ш	Booklet Pagination		О	С	0	0					0	0	0									0			П	П
	File	Insert Image	0	0	С	00	0	0				0	0	0						0						П	П
	_	Book Copy		0	С	0					0	0	0	0						0						П	П
		Program Job (each job)	0			0	0	0						0												П	П
		Program Job (after combined)	0	Г		0	Е	Ε	Ε	Ε	Е	Е	Ε	Ε	Е	Ε	Ε	Е		Е	Е		0	0		П	П
		Multi-Page Enlargement	0	0	C		0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0					П	П
اءِ ا		Non-Image Area Erase			С	0			0		0	0		0												П	П
[윤]		Image Centering			С	0	В			0	0	0	0	0						0						П	П
Application		Neg-/ Positive Reverse		Г	С		0	Г				0	0	0			0	0	0	0	0					П	П
립		Page Margin (Shift)			С	0		0			*															П	П
-		Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	0		С	0	0	0		*		0	0	0						0						П	П
		Image Repeat	0		С	0	0	0	0		0		*	*	0	0	0	0	0	0	0					П	П
1 1	Edit	Image Repeat (Auto)	0		С	0	Α	0	0		0	0		*	0	0	0	0	0	0	0					П	П
	ө	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	0	0	С	0	0	0	0		0	*	*		0	0	*7	*7	*7	0	0					П	П
		Frame Erasure		Г	С	0						0	0	0												П	П
1 1	Ĕ	Center Erase			С	0						0	0	0													
		Stamp			С	0			0			0	0	*7				*10	*10	*10							
		Watermark			С	0			0			0	0	*7			*10				*10						
		Copy Protect			С	0			0			0	0	*7				*10			*10						
		Image Overlay	0	0	С	0		0	0		0	0	0	0			*10			\sim	*10						
		Program Overlay			С	0			0			0	0				_			*10	\sim						
		Storing an Overlay Image	0	0	С	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0

11-76 bizhub PRO C5501

				0	utp	ut	Арі	olic	atio	on	
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Application Functions Insert Sheet Cover Sheet (PI)			Collated (Rotation)	Uncollated (Rotation)	Staple	Punch	Fold&Staple	Multi Half Fold	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)
			 ○ Uncollated 	0	0						
			0	С	С			*16	*16	*16	*16
		Chapter	0	0	0						
	l	Chapter (Print Insertion)	0	0	0						
	File Edit	Combine Originals	0	0	0					0	
	le e	Booklet Pagination	0	0	0					0	0
	l≝	Insert Image	0	Ō	0						
		Book Copy		0	0					A	•
		Program Job (each job)	0	0	0			0	0	0	0
		Program Job (after combined)	0	0	0			0	0	0	0
		Multi-Page Enlargement		0	0	0		0	0	0	
٦		Non-Image Area Erase		0	0						
Application		Image Centering		0	0						
<u>.</u> 2		Neg-/ Positive Reverse						0	0	0	0
b		Page Margin (Shift)									
₹		Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)									
	الدا	Image Repeat	0	0	0					0	
	اق	Image Repeat (Auto)	0	0	0					0	
	He le	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	0	0	0					0	
	lmage Edit	Frame Erasure									
	<u> </u>	Center Erase									
		Stamp									
		Watermark									
		Copy Protect									
		Image Overlay		0	0						
		Program Overlay									
		Storing an Overlay Image	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

None: Compatible

- o: Grayed out
- *: Condition last selected has priority. (Condition in the far left column will be released.)
- ▲: Warning message displays.
- A: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Unreleasable.
- B: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Releasable.
- C: Not specified
- D: Condition in the far left column does not function (ignored).
- E: Not grayed out but unavailable
- *1 Separate Scan mode is selected automatically.
- *4 Magnification ratio will be determined on the application screen provided for Multi-Page Enlargement. Auto Paper Select will be released and the tray loaded with the largest paper size will be selected automatically.
- *7 Only 2 in 1 and 2 Repeat modes are available. 4 in 1 mode is compatible only with Page Numbering in Stamp.

Grayed out or a message warns that the combination is unavailable.

		2 in 1 /	2 Re- peat	4 in 1 /	4 Re- peat	8 in 1 /	8 Re- peat
Stamp	Built-in Stamp	0	0	×	×	×	×
	Page No.	0	0	0	×	×	×
	Set Numbering	0	0	×	×	×	×
	Date/Time	0	0	×	×	×	×
Watermark	Watermark	0	0	×	×	×	×
	Set Numbering	0	0	×	×	×	×
	Copy Protect	0	0	×	×	×	×
Image Overlay	Image Overlay	×	×	×	×	×	×
	Program Overlay	0	×	0	×	×	×

Available× Not available

^{*10} Available combinations of Stamp/Watermark/Image Overlay/Program Overlay are as shown below.

	uilable combinations of Stamp/ termark/Image Overlay/Program	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	Built-in Stamp					*		*	*	*
2	Page No.									
3	Set Numbering (Stamp)						*		*	*
4	Date/Time									
5	Watermark	*					*	*	*	*
6	Set Numbering (Watermark)			*		*		*	*	*
7	Copy Protect	*				*			*	*
8	Image Overlay	*		*		*	*	*		*
9	Program Overlay	*		*		*	*	*	*	

^{*15} Compatible if Booklet Pagination is selected in combination.

11-78 bizhub PRO C5501

^{*16} Back cover cannot be attached.

^{*19} Only 2 in 1 and 2 Repeat modes are available.

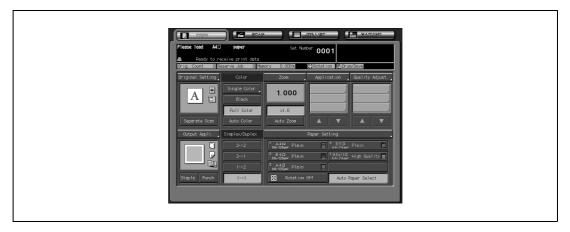
12 Output applications

12 Output applications

12.1 Selecting an output tray

This section describes how to select an output tray.

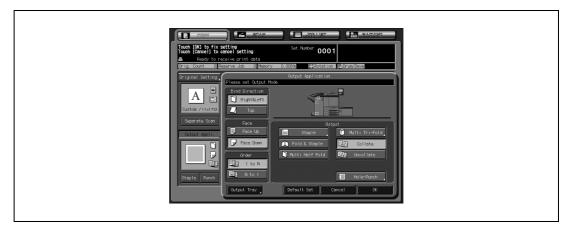
- Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.



The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

Output tray positions are indicated as square marks on the front image of the machine, and the tray mark currently selected appears highlighted.

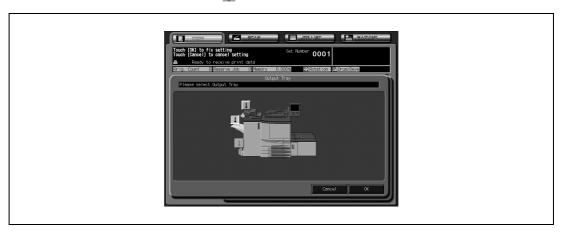
3 Touch [Output Tray].



The Output Tray Selection Screen reflecting the combination of optional devices will be displayed.



- 4 Select the desired output tray.
 - Touch the desired tray position key to highlight it.



- 5 Touch [OK] on the Output Tray Selection Screen.
 - The Output Application Screen will be restored, with the selected tray mark highlighted.
- Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The Copy Screen will be restored.



Reminder

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-4 bizhub PRO C5501

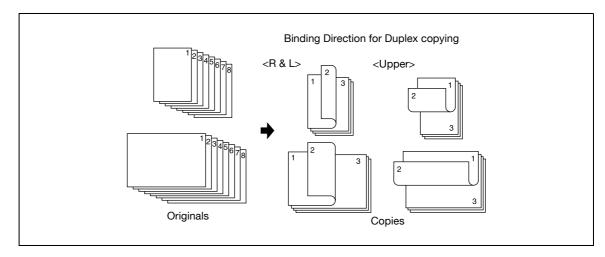
12.2 Setting binding direction for duplex copies

Use this function to specify the binding direction of output copies when setting duplex mode (1->2/2->2). Select [Top] when making top-bound duplex copies (printed upside down on back pages) from side-bound simplex/duplex originals (front and back pages have the same side up).

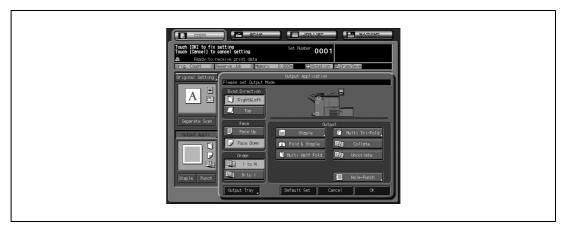


Detail

To make side-bound duplex copies (front and back pages have the same side up) from top-bound duplex originals (printed upside down on back pages), use the setting for binding direction of duplex originals. See page 9-3 for details.



- ✓ The top binding mode is effective only when duplex mode is selected.
- ✔ Resetting the machine will restore the right & left binding mode.
- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.
 The Output Application Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Top] under Bind Direction to select it.



4 Touch [OK].

12.3 Using Finisher FS-520

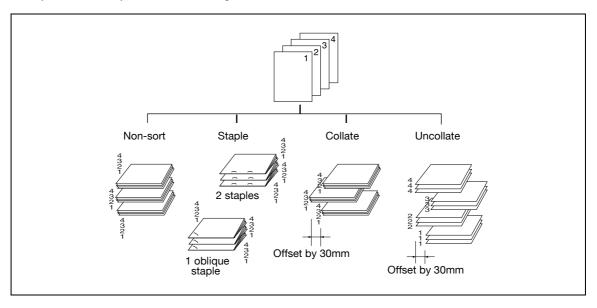
The Finisher FS-520 has a primary (main) tray and a secondary (sub) tray, each of which has the following output modes.

Output to the primary (main) tray

Mode	Description
Non-sort	Non-sort mode simply means that the offset-stacker finisher modes are not selected. Copies will be stacked upon exit without being offset by sorted sets.
Collate	Collate mode outputs multiple copies of the original set, having each sorted set offset by 30 mm upon exit.
Uncollate	Uncollate mode groups together multiple copies of each original and offsets the sets by 30 mm upon exit.
Staple	Staple mode offsets and staples each sorted set.

Combined with the output modes above except staple mode, you can also choose to output face up or face down, and output front to back or back to front.

Example: Make 3 copied sets from 4 original sheets



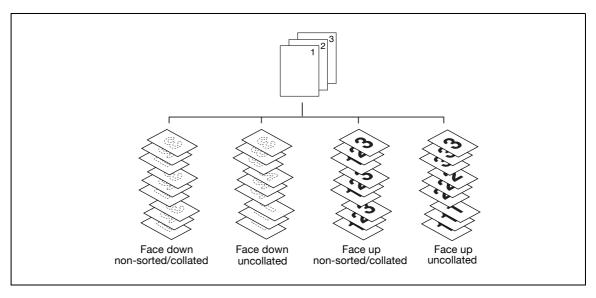
12-6 bizhub PRO C5501

Output to the secondary (sub) tray

Mode	Description
Non-sort/Col- late	Non-sort/Collate mode outputs multiple copies of the original set. No offset output is available.
Uncollate	Uncollate mode groups together multiple copies of each original. No offset output is available.

Combined with the output modes above, you can also choose to output face up or face down, and output front to back or back to front.

Example: Make 3 copied sets



This section describes the following output methods:

- Non-sort/Collate/Uncollate output to the primary (main) tray
- Stapled output to the primary (main) tray
- Non-sort/Collate/Uncollate output to the secondary (sub) tray



12.3.1 Non-sort/collate/uncollate output to the primary (main) tray

A machine with Finisher FS-520 installed is set to collate output to the primary (main) tray by default, regardless of whether or not to be equipped with other optional devices. Please select an output mode by following the procedures below.



Detail

You can change the initial output mode in the Utility setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference for details.

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-5.

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

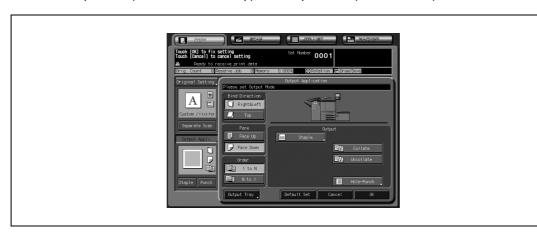
The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

Output tray positions are indicated as square marks on the front image of the machine, and the tray mark currently selected appears highlighted.

If the primary (main) tray is not selected, touch [Output Tray] to select it.

For details on selecting an output tray, see page 12-3.

- 3 Select the desired output mode.
 - For Non-sort output, cancel both [Collate] and [Uncollate].
 - For Collate output, touch [Collate] to highlight it.
 - For Uncollate output, touch [Uncollate] to highlight it.
 - Select output face (Face Down / Face Up), and output order (1 to N / N to 1) as needed.



4 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

The primary (main) tray gradually goes down while printed materials are output. DO NOT allow any object to interfere with the operation of the tray on the left side of the finisher, as any interference may cause damage to the finisher.

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-8 bizhub PRO C5501

12.3.2 Stapling output to the primary (main) tray

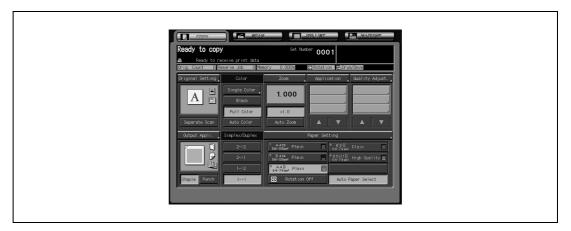
Copies will be stapled in this mode. Follow the procedure below to select the stapling position and number of staples: Top Left/Top Right (Corner Staple), Left/Top/Right (2 Position Staple).



Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-5.

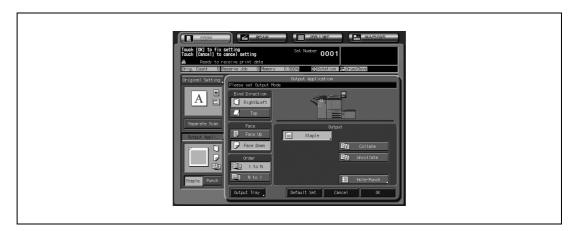
- Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Staple] on the Copy Screen.
 - Stapled sheets will be delivered to the primary (main) tray. The Output Application icon shows the stapling position currently selected.



- If you want to change the stapling position, proceed to the following steps.
- 3 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

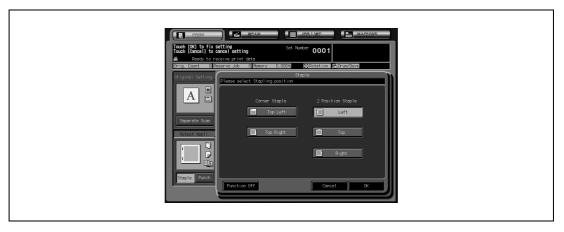
4 Touch [Staple] to select the stapling position.



The Staple Setting Screen will be displayed.



5 Touch the desired stapling position key to select it.



- 6 Touch [OK].
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Staple function with the current stapling position setting remained, touch [Function Off].

The Output Application Screen will be restored.

7 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

The primary (main) tray gradually goes down while printed materials are output. DO NOT allow any object to interfere with the operation of the tray on the left side of the finisher, as any interference may cause damage to the finisher.

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-10 bizhub PRO C5501

12.3.3 Collate/uncollate output to the secondary (sub) tray

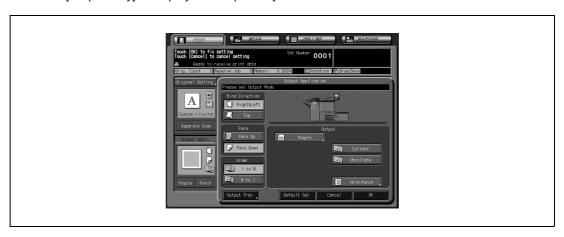
A machine with Finisher FS-520 installed is set to Collate output to the primary (main) tray by default, regardless of whether or not to be equipped with other optional devices. Change the output tray and select the desired output mode by following the procedure below.



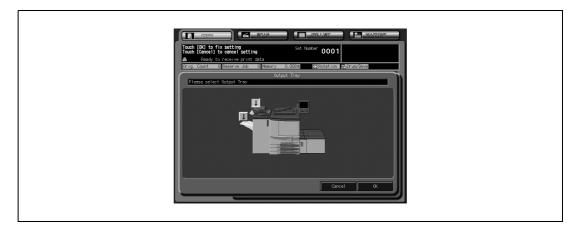
Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-5.

- Position the original.
- Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.
 The Output Application Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Select the secondary (sub) tray as the output tray.
 - Touch [Output Tray] to display the Output Tray Selection Screen.

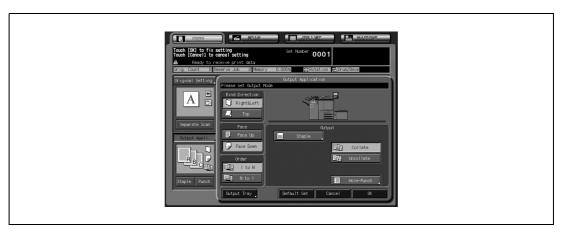


- Touch the tray position key $\cline{1}$ of the secondary (sub) tray to highlight it, then touch [OK].





- 4 Select the desired output mode.
 - For Collate output, touch [Collate] to highlight it.
 - For Uncollate output, touch [Uncollate] to highlight it.
 - Select output face (Face Down / Face Up), and output order (1 to N / N to 1) as needed.



5 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-12 bizhub PRO C5501

12.3.4 Punching file holes in copies (Punch)

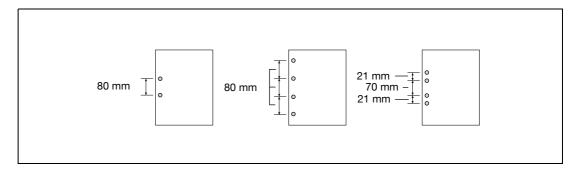
The Finisher FS-520 with Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 installed can punch file holes in output copies.



Reminder

Do not punch special paper type such as labels, tracing paper, etc. Otherwise, machine trouble may occur.

Be sure that the side guide plates of the paper tray are securely aligned to the paper; otherwise the copies may not be punched in position.

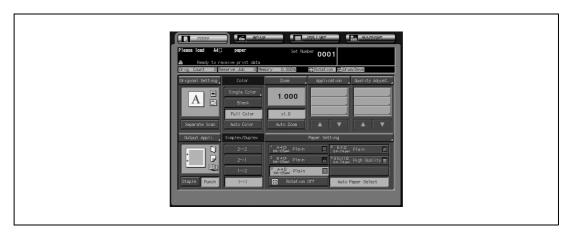




Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-5.

- Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Punch] on the Copy Screen.
 - Punched sheets will be delivered to the primary (main) tray. The Output Application icon shows the number of punch holes and punch position currently selected.

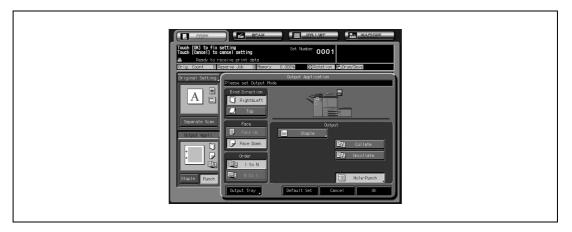


- If you want to change the number of punch holes and punch position, proceed to the following steps.
- 3 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

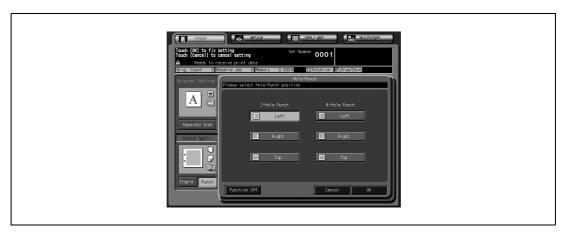


4 Touch [Hole-Punch].



The Hole-Punch Screen will be displayed.

5 Touch the desired punch key to select it.



- 6 Touch [OK].
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Punch function with the current number of punch holes and punch position setting remained, touch [Function Off].

The Output Application Screen will be restored.

7 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-14 bizhub PRO C5501

12.4 Using Finisher FS-607

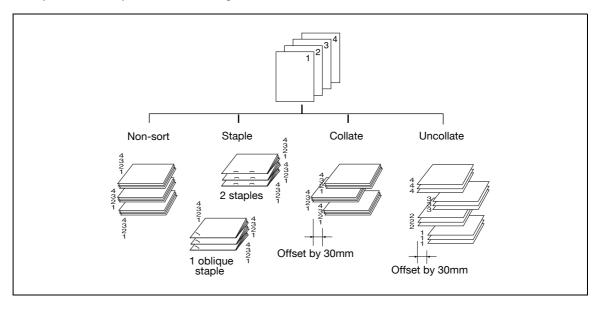
The Finisher FS-607 has a primary (main) tray and a secondary (sub) tray, each of which has the following output modes.

Output to the primary (main) tray

Mode	Description
Non-sort	Non-sort mode simply means that the offset-stacker finisher modes are not selected. Copies will be stacked upon exit without being offset by sorted sets.
Collate	Collate mode outputs multiple copies of the original set, having each sorted set offset by 30 mm upon exit.
Uncollate	Uncollate mode groups together multiple copies of each original and offsets the sets by 30 mm upon exit.
Staple	Staple mode offsets and staples each sorted set.

Combined with the output modes above except staple mode, you can also choose to output face up or face down, and output front to back or back to front.

Example: make 3 copied sets from 4 original sheets

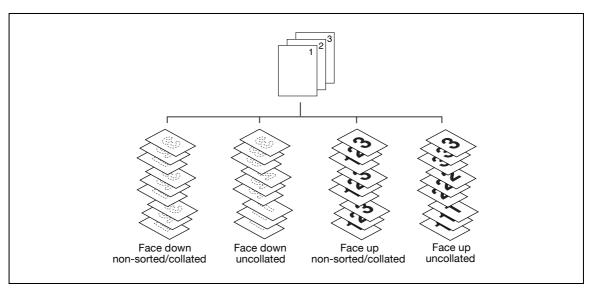


Output to the secondary (sub) tray

Mode	Description
Non-sort/Col- late	Non-sort/Collate mode outputs multiple copies of the original set. No offset output is available.
Uncollate	Uncollate mode groups together multiple copies of each original. No offset output is available.

Combined with the output modes above, you can also choose to output face up or face down, and output front to back or back to front.

Example: Make 3 copied sets



This section describes the following output methods:

- Non-sort/Collate/Uncollate output to the primary (main) tray
- Stapled output to the primary (main) tray
- Non-sort/Collate/Uncollate output to the secondary (sub) tray

12-16 bizhub PRO C5501

12.4.1 Non-sort/collate/uncollate output to the primary (main) tray

A machine with Finisher FS-607 installed is set to non-sort output to the primary (main) tray by default, regardless of whether or not to be equipped with other optional devices. Please select an output mode by following the procedures below.



Detail

You can change the initial output mode in the Utility setting. See the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference for details.

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-6.

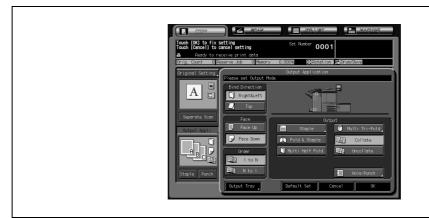
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

Output tray positions are indicated as square marks on the front image of the machine, and the tray mark currently selected appears highlighted.

If the primary (main) tray is not selected, touch [Output Tray] to select it. See page 12-3 for details.

- 3 Select the desired output mode.
 - For Non-sort output, cancel both [Collate] and [Uncollate].
 - For Collate output, touch [Collate] to highlight it.
 - For Uncollate output, touch [Uncollate] to highlight it.
 - Select output face (Face Down / Face Up), and output order (1 to N / N to 1) as needed.



4 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

The primary (main) tray gradually goes down while printed materials are output. DO NOT allow any object to interfere with the operation of the tray on the left side of the finisher, as any interference may cause damage to the finisher.

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12.4.2 Stapling output to the primary (main) tray

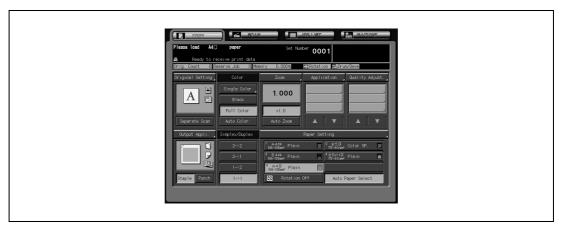
Copies will be stapled in this mode. Follow the procedure below to select the stapling position and number of staples: Top Left/Top/Right (2 Position Staple).



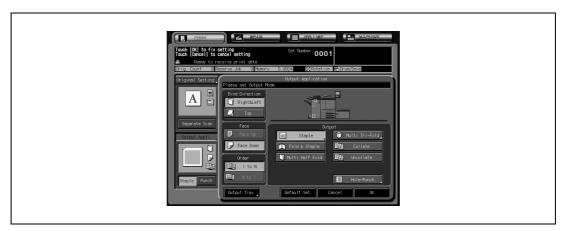
Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-6.

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Staple] on the Copy Screen.
 - Stapled sheets will be delivered to the primary (main) tray. The Output Application icon shows the stapling position currently selected.



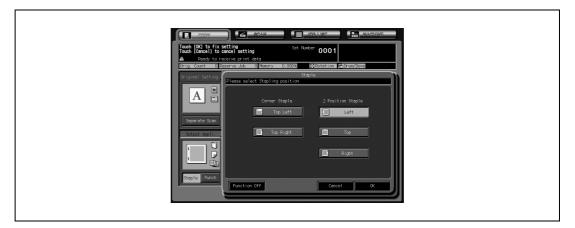
- If you want to change the stapling position, proceed to the following steps.
- Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.
 The Output Application Screen will be displayed.
- 4 Touch [Staple] to select the stapling position.



The Staple Setting Screen will be displayed.

12-18 bizhub PRO C5501

5 Touch the desired stapling position key to select it.



- 6 Touch [OK].
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Staple function with the current stapling position setting remained, touch [Function Off].

The Output Application Screen will be restored.

7 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

The primary (main) tray gradually goes down while printed materials are output. DO NOT allow any object to interfere with the operation of the tray on the left side of the finisher, as any interference may cause damage to the finisher.

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.



12.4.3 Collate/uncollate output to the secondary (sub) tray

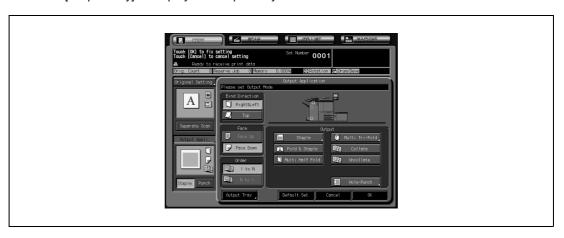
A machine with Finisher FS-607 installed is set to Collate output to the primary (main) tray by default, regardless of whether or not to be equipped with other optional devices. Change the output tray and select the desired output mode by following the procedure below.



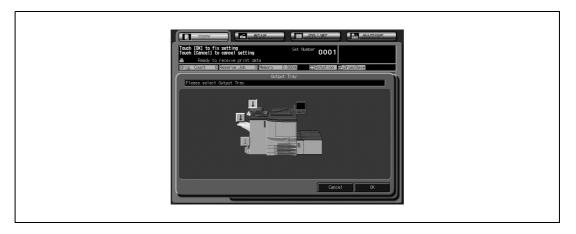
Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-6.

- Position the original.
- Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.
 The Output Application Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Select the secondary (sub) tray as the output tray.
 - Touch [Output Tray] to display the Output Tray Selection Screen.

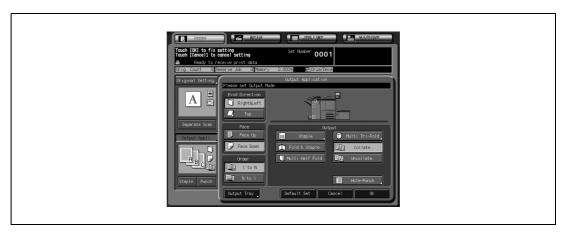


- Touch the tray position key] of the secondary (sub) tray to highlight it, then touch [OK].



12-20 bizhub PRO C5501

- 4 Select the desired output mode.
 - For Collate output, touch [Collate] to highlight it.
 - For Uncollate output, touch [Uncollate] to highlight it.
 - Select output face (Face Down / Face Up), and output order (1 to N / N to 1) as needed.



5 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

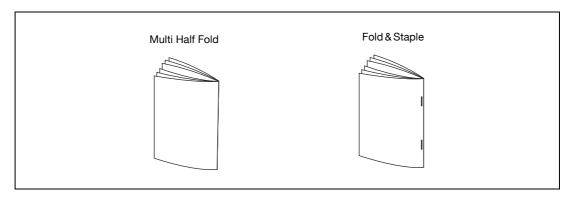
12.4.4 Making folded booklet (Multi half fold/Fold & Staple)

The machine with Finisher FS-607 installed can use Multi Half Fold or Fold&Staple mode to make a folded or folded & stapled booklet in combination with Booklet Pagination feature in Application settings.



Detail

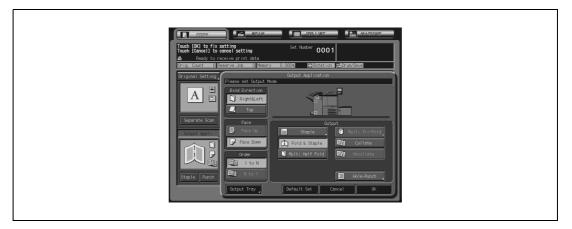
For specifications of copy paper to be used, see "3 Paper and original information".



- Paper size: SRA3 □, SRA4 □, A3 □, B4 □, A4 □, 12"×18" □, 11" × 17" □, 8.5" × 14" □, 8.5" × 11" □ (SRA3 □ is for Multi Half Fold only.)
- ✓ Paper weight: 64 to 105 g/m² (when using trays 1 to 4 and bypass tray)
- ✓ Folding capacity:
 - Multi Half Fold: 3 sheets (64 to 80 g/m²), 1 sheet (81 to 105 g/m²) Fold & Staple: 20 sheets (64 to 80 g/m²), 16 sheets (81 to 105 g/m²)
- Output tray: Folding mode tray
- ✓ Folding mode tray capacity:
 - 33 sets max. of 3-sheet-multi-half-folded booklet (paper length 300 mm or more)
 - 25 sets max. of 3-sheet-multi-half-folded booklet (paper length 299 mm or less)
 - 20 sets max. of 5-sheet-folded & stapled booklet (paper length 300 mm or more)
 - 15 sets max. of 5-sheet-folded & stapled booklet (paper length 299 mm or less)
- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

The Output Application Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Fold & Staple] or [Multi Half Fold] to highlight it.



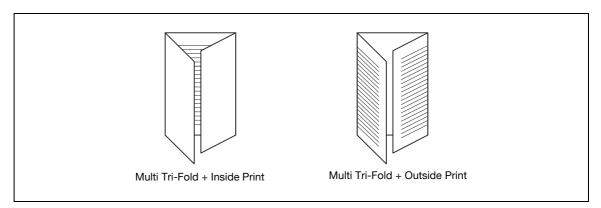
4 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen. With Multi Half Fold selected, Booklet Pagination in Application is also selected automatically.

12-22 bizhub PRO C5501

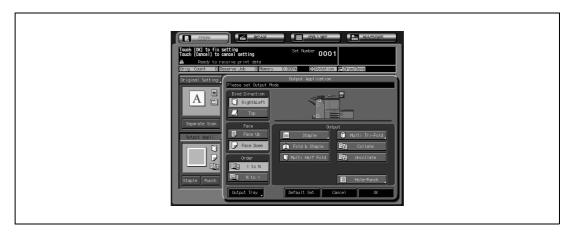
12.4.5 Folding copies in three (Multi tri-fold)

The Finisher FS-607 can fold A4 \square or 8.5"×11" \square copies in three upon exit. Choose to print outside the fold (Outside Print) or inside (Inside Print).



To fold copies in three

- ✓ Number of folded sheet: Max. 3 sheets
- ✓ Paper size: A4 □ or 8.5" × 11" □
- ✔ Paper weight: 64 to 105 g/m² (when using trays 1 to 4 and bypass tray)
- ✔ Printed side: Selectable (inside or outside)
- Output tray: Folding mode tray
- ✓ Tray capacity: 50 sets (one tri-fold sheet)
- ✓ The output order will automatically be set to N to 1 for Inside Print, and 1 to N for Outside Print.
- Selecting Inside Print automatically sets the output face to Face Up, while Outside Print sets to Face Down.
- 1 Position the original.
- Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.
 The Output Application Screen will be displayed.
- 3 Touch [Multi Tri-Fold].



The Multi Tri-Fold Screen will be displayed.



4 Touch [Outside Print] or [Inside Print], as desired.



- 5 Touch [OK].

 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 To release the function with current setting. To release the function with current setting remained, touch [Function Off].

The Output Application Screen will be restored.

6 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.

12.4.6 Punching file holes in copies (Punch)

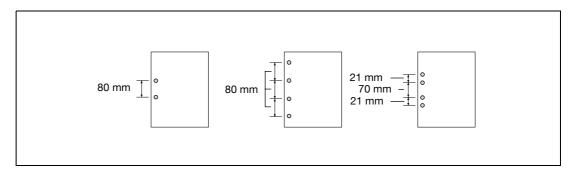
The Finisher FS-607 with Punch kit PK-512/PK-513 installed can punch file holes in output copies.



Reminder

Do not punch special paper type such as labels, tracing paper, etc. Otherwise, machine trouble may occur.

Be sure that the side guide plates of the paper tray are securely aligned to the paper; otherwise the copies may not be punched in position.

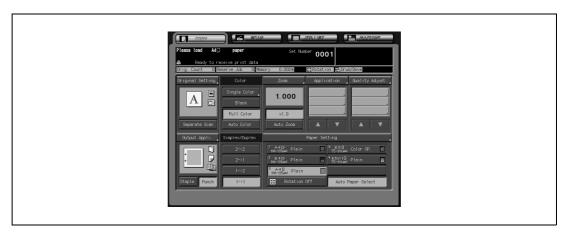




Detail

For detailed specifications, see page 3-3 and page 7-6.

- 1 Position the original.
- 2 Touch [Punch] on the Copy Screen.
 - Punched sheets will be delivered to the primary (main) tray. The Output Application icon shows the number of punch holes and punch position currently selected.

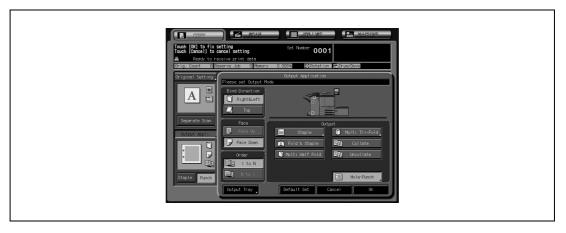


- If you want to change the number of punch holes and punch position, proceed to the following steps.
- 3 Touch [Output Appli.] on the Copy Screen.

The Output Application Screen will be displayed.



4 Touch [Hole-Punch].



The Hole-Punch Screen will be displayed.

5 Touch the desired punch key to select it.



- 6 Touch [OK].
 - To restore the previous setting, touch [Cancel].
 - To release the Punch function with the current number of punch holes and punch position setting remained, touch [Function Off].

The Output Application Screen will be restored.

7 Touch [OK] on the Output Application Screen.

The specified output mode icon will be displayed on the Copy Screen.



Reminder

The primary (main) tray gradually goes down while printed materials are output. DO NOT allow any object to interfere with the operation of the tray on the left side of the finisher, as any interference may cause damage to the finisher.

Be careful not to exceed the finisher tray capacity when selecting the print quantity, otherwise unexpected trouble may be caused.

12-26 bizhub PRO C5501

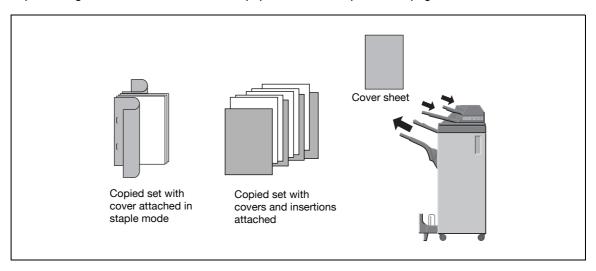
12.5 Cover sheet feeding (Paper inserter)

The Finisher FS-520/FS-607 with Paper inserter PI-502 installed can attach cover sheets to output copies.

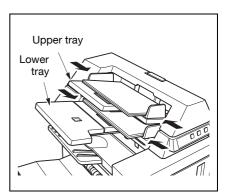
Using Insert Sheet function, cover sheets loaded in the upper and lower trays of the paper inserter will be attached as a front cover and/or back cover or insertion sheet to output copies, and also using Staple mode, a covered and stapled book can be made.

Or, using Cover with Blank Sheet mode of Booklet Pagination and Multi Half Fold/ Fold&Staple with Trimming mode on the machine with Finisher FS-607, a booklet-type cover will be attached to the multiple page signature booklets.

Paper setting for the covers to be loaded in paper inserter is required. See page 9-33 for details.



- ✓ Upper/Lower tray capacity: 200 sheets (200 g/m² paper) or within 30 mm thick each
- Use ADF
- ✓ The cover paper size should be the same as copy paper size.
- ✓ Cover paper loaded in the paper inserter cannot be copied.
- 1 Load cover paper into the upper and lower trays of the paper inserter.



Use Insert Sheet or Booklet Pagination function to attach covers to the output copies.

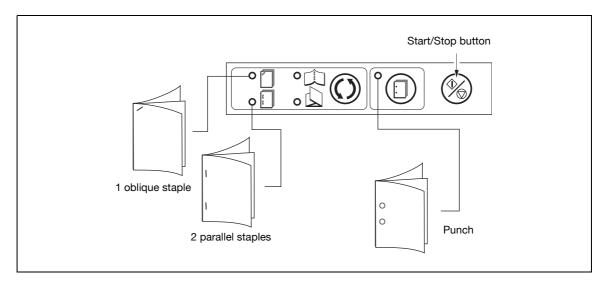
12.6 Using Finisher FS-520/FS-607 manually

The Finisher FS-520/FS-607 with Paper inserter PI-502 installed can be operated manually, using the operation panel provided on the paper inserter.

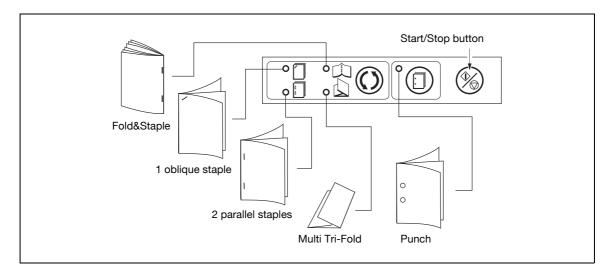
Place a set of paper into the lower tray. Upper tray cannot be used.

Available finishing modes according to the optional configuration are described below.

- Finisher FS-520 + Paper inserter PI-502
- Staple (1 staple / 2 staples)
- Finisher FS-520 + Paper inserter PI-502 + Punch kit PK-512/PK-513
- Staple (1 staple / 2 staples)
- Punch

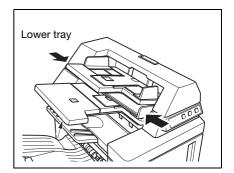


- Finisher FS-607 + Paper inserter PI-502
- Staple (1 staple / 2 staples)
- Fold & Staple
- Multi Tri-Fold
- Finisher FS-607 + Paper inserter PI-502 + Punch kit PK-512/PK-513
- Staple (1 staple / 2 staples)
- Fold & Staple
- Multi Tri-Fold
- Punch

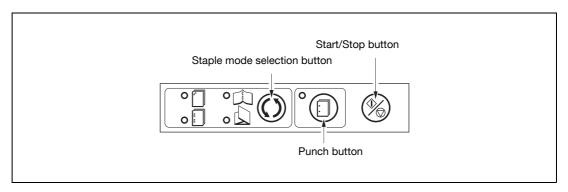


12-28 bizhub PRO C5501

- ✓ Paper should be placed only in the lower tray of the paper inserter. Upper tray cannot be used.
- ✓ Staple (1 staple / 2 staples) and Punch can be used in combination.
- 1 Place a set of paper in the lower tray of the paper inserter.
 - Staple (1 staple / 2 staples): Place paper face UP.
 - Punch: Place paper face UP.
 - Fold&Staple: Place the front of the finished set UP.
 - Multi Tri-Fold: Place the outside of the fold UP.
 - Align the guide plate with the paper.



Press Staple mode selection button and Punch button to select the desired mode.



- To select Staple (1 staple / 2 staples), Fold&Staple, or Multi Tri-Fold, press Staple mode selection button to turn on the desired mode lamp.
- To select Punch, press Punch button to turn on the lamp.
 To use Staple in combination, turn on the desired Staple mode lamp.
 To select only the Punch mode, turn off all the other mode lamps.
- 3 Press Start/Stop button.
 - Do you want to stop the output operation?
 - → Press Start/Stop button on the operation panel of paper inserter.

12.7 Copy conditions incompatible with output applications

		Г										F	Basi	ic										\neg
													Juo						Bi	rigii nd ction			ttin	<u> </u>
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Output Applications	1>1	1>2	2>1	2>2	Using Original Glass	Using ADF	Separate Scan	Full Color	Black	Single Color	Gray Scale	Auto Color	APS	AMS	1.000 Magnification	Zoom	Rotation	Right & Left Binding		Normal	Left	UpsideDown	Right
	Face Up											С											П	
	Face Down											С												
	1toN											С											П	
_	Nto1											С											П	
Application	Collated											С											П	
Sa	Uncollated											С											П	П
悥	Collated (Rotation)											С				*							П	
¥	Uncollated (Rotation)											С				*							П	
İ	Staple											С											П	П
Output	Punch											С											П	
10	Fold&Staple											С											П	
	Multi Half Fold											С											П	
	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)											С											П	П
	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)											С												

														asic	;										
								С	rig			ettii									(Oth	ers	;	
			lma	age	Э		Ty	ре		Sp	рес	ial	Thi	ckn	ess		S	ize				(j			П
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Output Applications	Text/Photo	Photo	Text	Мар	Printed	Photo Paper	Copied	Inkjet	Normal	Mixed Original	Z-Fold Original	Normal	Thick	Thin	Standard	Custom Size	Custom Size (Full Area)	Tab Paper	After Proof Copy	Separate Scan (during scanning)	Interrupt Copy (When Current comp.)	Interrupt Copy (Stop Immediately)	IP Scanner	Reserve Job
	Face Up																								П
	Face Down																								П
	1toN																								
L	Nto1																								
ţį	Collated																								
<u> S</u>	Uncollated																								
Application	Collated (Rotation)										*	*						*	*						
	Uncollated (Rotation)										*	*						*	*						
bul	Staple																								
Output	Punch																								
٢	Fold&Staple										*														
	Multi Half Fold										*														
	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)										*														
	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)										*										L				

12-30 bizhub PRO C5501

		В	asi	С				C	olo	or A	ιdjι	ıstr	ner	nt					Α	ppl	ica	tior	ī	\neg
		0	the	rs																File	e E	dit		\neg
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Output Applications	Without ADF	Coin Vendor (parallel)	Coin Vendor (serial/card management)	Copy Density	Adjust Background	B-Side Prevent	RGB Adjustment	Hue	Saturation	Brightness	Screen	Sharpness	Contrast	Distinction	Color Balance	Glossy	Insert Sheet	Cover Sheet (PI)	Chapter	Chapter (Print Insertion)	Combine Originals	Booklet Pagination	Insert Image
	Face Up	С	С	С		Ė					Г									*	*		*	П
	Face Down	С	С	С																			П	П
	1toN	С	С	О																				
_	Nto1	С	С	С																				
[교	Collated	С	С	O																				
<u> </u> 2	Uncollated	С	С	С														*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Application	Collated (Rotation)	С	С	C														*	С	*	*	*	*	*
ΙĒ	Uncollated (Rotation)	С	С	С														*	С	*	*	*	*	*
Į d	Staple	С	С	O																				
Output	Punch	С	С	C							\Box												\square	
	Fold&Staple	С	С	С															*16				\square	Ш
	Multi Half Fold	С	С	О															*16			*	*	
	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	С	С	О															*16			*	*	
	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)																						\square	

		Application File Edit Image Edit																0	utp	ut						
		F	ile	Edi	t							lm	age	e E	dit							A	\pp	lica	atio	n
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Output Applications	Book Copy	Program Job (each job)	Program Job (after combined)	Multi-Page Enlargement	Non-Image Area Erase	Image Centering	Neg-/ Positive Reverse	ı	Page Margin (Reduce & Shift)	Image Repeat	Image Repeat (Auto)	Image Repeat (2/4/8 Repeat)	Frame Erasure	Center Erase	Stamp	Watermark	Copy Protect	Image Overlay	Program Overlay	Storing an Overlay Image	Face Up	Face Down	1toN	Nto1	Collated
	Face Up			С																		\sum	*			
	Face Down			С																		*			*	
	1toN																					Ш			*	
١ _ح	Nto1																					Α	0			
Application	Collated			С																						
<u> </u> 2	Uncollated		*	С							*	*	*													*
ᇛ	Collated (Rotation)	*	*	С	*	*	*				*	*	*						*							*
Ā	Uncollated (Rotation)	*	*	С	*	*	*				*	*	*						*							*
ΙŒ	Staple			С																		0	Α	Α	0	*
Output	Punch			С																		0	Α	Α	0	
١	Fold&Staple	*15	*	С	*			*														0	Α	*27	*27	*
	Multi Half Fold	*15	*	С	*			*														0	Α	*27	*27	*
	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	•	*	С	*			*			*	*	*									Α	0	*28	*28	*
	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)	•																				0	Α	*27	*27	*

			0	utp	ut.	Apı	olic	atio	on	
	Copy Conditions Incompatible with Output Applications	Uncollated	Collated (Rotation)	Uncollated (Rotation)	Staple	Punch	Fold&Staple	Multi Half Fold	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)
	Face Up				*	*	*	*		*
	Face Down								*	
	1toN						*	*	*	*
_	Nto1				0	0	*	*	*	*
Output Application	Collated	*	*	*	*		*	*	*	
ig	Uncollated		*	*	*		*	*	*	*
ldd	Collated (Rotation)	*		*	С	С	С	С	С	
Ā	Uncollated (Rotation)	*	*		С	С	С	С	С	
bn	Staple	*	С	С			*	*	*	*
Ĭ	Punch		С	С			*	*	*	*
	Fold&Staple	*	С	С	*	*		*	*	*
	Multi Half Fold	*	С	С	*	*	*		*	*
	Multi Tri-Fold (Inside Print)	*	С	С	*	*	*	*		*
	Multi Tri-Fold (Outside Print)	*	С	С	*	*	*	*	*	\setminus

None: Compatible

- o: Grayed out
- *: Condition last selected has priority. (Condition in the far left column will be released.)
- A: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Unreleasable.
- B: Condition in the top row is selected automatically. Releasable.
- C: Not specified
- D: Condition in the far left column does not function (ignored).
- E: Not grayed out but unavailable
- *16 Back cover cannot be attached.
- *27 A for 1 to N, o for N to 1 in FS-520/FS-607
- *28 o for 1 to N, A for N to 1 in FS-520/FS-607

12-32 bizhub PRO C5501

13 Advanced information

13 Advanced information

13.1 Checking feature selections before copying: Mode check

Display the Check Screen to check the feature selections you made, and use Proof Copy to make a sample copy if needed, before making multiple copies. This is a convenient and cost effective way of viewing the results of the copying selections.

- ✔ Proof copy is available when using ADF, or when using Separate Scan mode for more than 100 sheets of original or originals to be scanned from original glass.
- Position the original, then select the desired copy conditions on the Copy Screen.
 - Or, use Separate Scan mode to scan all originals.
- Press [Mode Check] on the control panel.
 The Check Screen will be displayed.



3 Check the job settings on the screen, using [Next] and [Previous] as required.



- To make any setting change from the Check Screen, proceed to the next step.
- To release any application function from the Check Screen, proceed to step 5.
- If a sample copy is needed, proceed to step 6.
- If settings are OK, proceed to step 7.



- 4 Change the settings from the Check Screen.
 - Touch the desired copying condition key (Basic Setting/ Output Application/ Original Setting/ Quality Adjustment/ Application) on the Check Screen, then touch [Change].

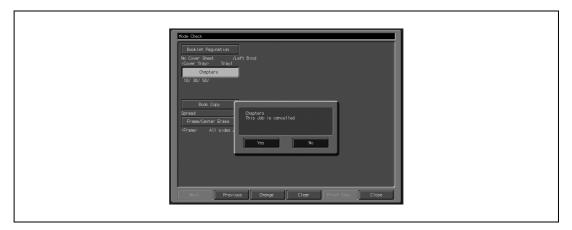


- The LCD will display an appropriate screen to change the copying condition selected. Change the setting as desired, then touch [OK] to restore the Check Screen to return to the checking steps.
- When [Bookmark] has been checked on some subsequent screen, selecting the application function key will jump to that screen. See page 11-4 for details.
- Do not press [Stop] or [Reset] to change the setting, or all the settings will restore the initial condition.
- If making a set or sample copy, proceed to step 6.
- To start printing without proof copying, proceed to step 7.
- 5 Release application functions.
 - Touch the desired application function key on the Check Screen to highlight it, then touch [Clear].
 The confirmation popup menu will appear on the Check Screen.



13-4 bizhub PRO C5501

- Touch [Yes] to cancel the function, or [No] to restore.



- If making a sample copy, proceed to the next step.
- To start printing, proceed to step 7.
- 6 Make a sample copy.
 - Press [Proof Copy] on the control panel or touch [Proof Copy] on the Check Screen.
 A sample copy will be output and the Copy Screen will be resumed.
 - Press [Stop] to suspend the proof copying. In this case, the scanned image data will not be deleted from memory.
 - If any setting change is required, press [Mode Check] and return to step 3.
 If the copy result is satisfactory, proceed to the next step.
 - If the desired selection cannot be changed, press [Reset] to delete all the data in memory and restart the job setting.
- 7 Change the print quantity as required, then press [Start].
 - If proof copying has been made, the machine will simply start printing without scanning originals.

13.2 Making sample set for checking results: Proof copy

Use Proof copy to produce a sample of the copied set before making multiple copies. This is a convenient and cost effective way of viewing results of the copying selections.

- ✔ Proof copy is available when using ADF, or when using Separate Scan mode for more than 100 sheets of original or originals to be scanned from original glass.
- Position the original, then select the desired copy conditions on the Copy Screen.
 - Or, use Separate Scan mode to scan all originals.
- 2 Press [Proof Copy] on the control panel.

A sample copy will be output while scanning originals in the ADF

If Separate Scan mode has been used, a sample set will be delivered immediately.



3 Check the sample copy for specified copy conditions.



- Some conditions can be changed from the Copy Screen. See page 13-3 for details.
- 4 Change the settings or print quantity, as required, then press [Start].
 - If the desired selection cannot be changed, press [Reset] to delete all the data in memory and restart the job setting.



13-6 bizhub PRO C5501

13.3 Interrupting job in progress: Interrupt mode

Use the Interrupt mode to interrupt copying in progress to perform a simple job. Pressing [Interrupt] on the control panel stops the machine operation temporarily at the timing available for interrupt copying. When interrupt copying is completed, the settings for the previous job restore automatically and the Copy Screen displays.

✓ The Interrupt mode cannot be selected with the following copier conditions: Machine is not operating printing or scanning job.

Program Overlay is in use.

The Call for Service message displays or a paper misfeed occurs. Already using Interrupt mode.

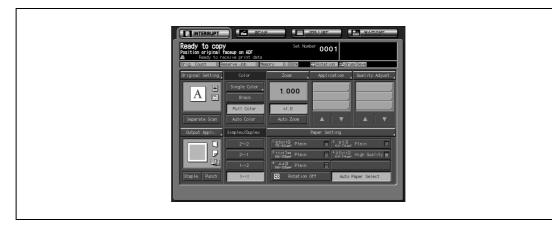
- ✔ Reserve job cannot be operated in Interrupt mode.
- ✓ Auto Low Power or Auto Shut-off will not function during Interrupt mode.
- 1 Press [Interrupt] on the control panel.

The [Interrupt] LED starts flashing, then keeps lighted when machine is ready for Interrupt mode.

The Copy Screen for interrupt copying will be displayed.



2 Set copy conditions, as desired.



- All copy conditions except Reserve mode can be specified.
- 3 Position the original, then press [Start] to start the interrupt copying.
- 4 When interrupt copying is completed, press [Interrupt] again.
 The [Interrupt] LED turns out and the settings of the previous job will be restored.
- 5 Press [Start] to resume copying.

13.4 Storing and recalling job conditions: Mode memory

Use Mode Memory to store frequently used copy job settings, which can be recalled at any time.

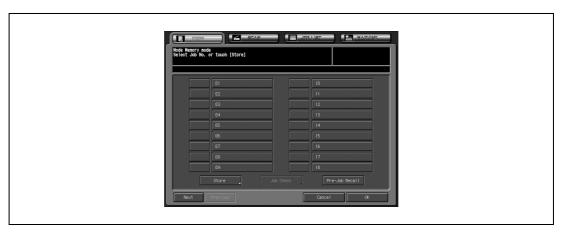
13.4.1 Storing job conditions

Follow the procedure below to store the copy job setting.

- ✔ Available settings: Basic setting, Original Setting, Special Image, Application, Output Application, Print quantity
- ✓ Stored job is given a job number (01 ~ 30) and alphabetical name (dispensable).
- ✓ Up to 30 jobs can be stored.
- 1 Make job selections from the Copy Screen.
- Press [Mode Memory] on the control panel.
 The Mode Memory Screen will be displayed.



3 Touch [Store].



The Job Store Check Screen will be displayed.

4 Review the settings, then touch [OK].



13-8 bizhub PRO C5501

The Mode Memory Screen will be restored.

- What if any correction is required?
- → Touch [Cancel] to return to the Copy Screen. Make new selections, then restart the operation from step 2.
- Touch the desired job key, then touch [OK].
 - The job keys numbered from 01 to 18 are displayed on the screen. Touching [Next] will display the keys from 19 to 30.
 - A blank keys without a lock icon indicate that no job is stored under that key, and a named job without a lock icon displayed can be overwritten.
 - The key with a lock icon displayed is locked and cannot be selected.
 - Touch [OK] to proceed to the screen for entering the job name.
- 6 Enter the desired job name, then touch [OK].
 - Enter a job name in up to 16 characters, using the touch panel alphabet keypad.
 - Use arrow keys [◄] and [▶] to move the cursor, and use [Shift] to enter upper case letters or symbols.
 - Touch [OK] to complete the setting and return to the Mode Memory Screen. Check that the job name has been correctly entered.



Touch [OK] on the Mode Memory Screen to complete the setting and return to the Copy Screen.



Note

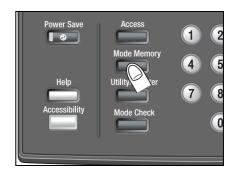
If you do not wish to enter a name, simply touch [OK]. The key displays 16 asterisks (*) in place of a name.

13.4.2 Recalling stored job settings

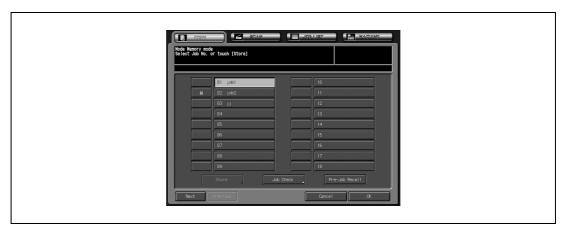
Follow the procedure below to recall jobs that are already stored.

- ✓ The Mode Memory Screen can be displayed only from the Copy Screen. If any other screen such as Machine Status Screen is displayed, pressing [Mode Memory] will be ignored.
- Position the original.
- Touch [Copy] tab to display the Copy Screen, then press [Mode Memory] on the control panel.

The Mode Memory Screen will be displayed.



3 Touch a job number key to select a job you want to recall.



- The job keys numbered from 01 to 18 are displayed on the screen. Touching [Next] will display the keys from 19 to 30.
- The desired job can also be selected by entering two-digit number from the control panel keypad.
- 4 Touch [Job Check].

The Job Recall Check Screen displays to enable you to review the settings.

5 Review the settings, then touch [OK].



The settings of the selected job will be recalled on the restored Copy Screen.

6 Press [Start] to print.

13-10 bizhub PRO C5501

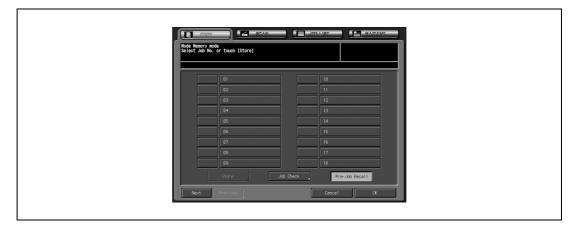
13.5 Recalling previous job settings

Follow the procedure below to copy with a previous job settings.

- Only the last-completed output job settings can be recalled as the previous job settings. Non-completed job or reserve job settings cannot be recalled, even if the setting operations have been made last.
- ✓ The previous job settings can be recalled even after the machine power is turned off then on.
- Position the original.
- Press [Mode Memory] on the control panel.
 The Mode Memory Screen will be displayed.



3 Touch [Pre-Job Recall].



The [Job Check] key will be active on the screen.

- 4 Touch [Job Check] to review the settings.
 - The Mode Check Screen will be displayed. Check the settings of the previous job on the screen.
 - Recalled settings can be altered from this screen. See page 13-3 for details.
- 5 Touch [OK].

The settings of the previous output job will be recalled on the Copy Screen.

6 Press [Start] to print.

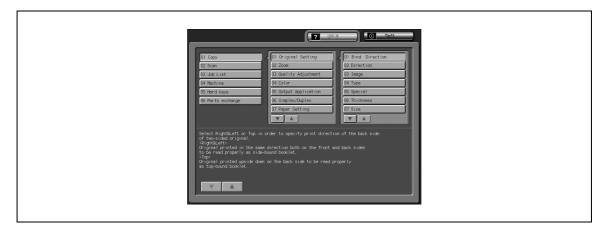


13.6 Displaying screen for operation guide: Help mode

The Help Screen provides you with the information about copy job setting procedure, toner and paper supply, and control panel and touch panel key operation.

Help Screen comprises the following menu items.

- 0.
 - Copy provides information on function and operation of the keys on Copy Screen.
- 02
 - Scan provides information on function and operation of the keys on Scanner Screen.
- 03
- Job List provides information on function and operation of the keys on Job List Screen.
- 04
 - Machine provides information on function and operation of the keys on Machine Status Screen.
- 05
 - Hard keys provides information on function and operation of the keys on control panel.
- 06
 - Parts exchange provides information on adding toner, loading paper, adding staples, and emptying punch/trimmer waste basket.



To display help screen

→ Press [Help] on the control panel.



13-12 bizhub PRO C5501

13.7 Adjusting response time of touch keys: Accessibility

This machine can sets the desired interval between touching the screen key and machine response in advance.

Pressing the Accessibility key on the control panel will select this interval, so that the machine will respond to the touch key operation only when the key is kept touched for a specified period of time. This function is convenient for physically handicapped users who have difficulty in touching keys with



accuracy.

Detail

The POD Administrator's reference describes how to set the desired response time.

- ✓ Response time can be selected from Normal/ 0.5 second/ 1 second/ 2 seconds/ 3 seconds.
- 1 Press [Accessibility] on the control panel.

The Accessibility LED lights in green to indicate that the specified response time is set on the machine. If Normal is selected as response time, pressing [Accessibility] will not make any change in the touch key operation.



To deactivated this function, press [Accessibility] for one second or longer.
The Accessibility LED goes off, and normal response time will be restored in touch key operation.

13.8 Controlling copier from browser: Remote panel

When the machine is connected with a PC over a network, the web browser activated on the PC enables you to operate the machine. Also, the state of the machine can be monitored through web browser. This function promotes efficiency in operation using PC keyboard and mouse.

Remote Panel functions:

- Touch panel screens can be displayed on the web browser and operated using a mouse.
- Control panel keys can be displayed on the web browser and operated using a mouse.
- Passwords can be entered using PC keyboard.
- Operations performed using remote panel can be recorded and replayed.
- The machine operation using touch panel and control panel can be voided. (In this case, machine operation is available from the remote panel only.)

Remote Monitor functions:

- The touch panel screen, job condition, and state of the machine can be monitored using the automatic reload function of the web browser.
- The remote panel can be displayed in an exclusive window.

Multi Monitor functions:

- Up to 10 remote monitors can be displayed in a browser to overlook 10 machines at a time.
- The remote panel and remote monitor can be displayed in the same browser.

The following functions are unavailable:

- Reading the screen performed by subsidiary system
- Turning ON/OFF the machine power (Main power switch/Sub power switch, Power Save, Weekly Timer)
- Reporting paper misfeed, or displaying counter in real time



Detail

The setting procedure for the IP address is provided in POD Administrator's reference.

To specify the IP address of the PC to be used for Remote Panel function, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

When using Multi Monitor, the IP address of all the machines to be monitored should be specified. This setting is available in the Web Utilities function. For details, see the User's guide – POD Administrator's reference.

13-14 bizhub PRO C5501

Controlling copier from browser: Remote panel

- ✓ Set the Security Strengthen mode OFF on the machine.
- ✓ The machine should be connected with a PC over a network with TCP/IP enabled.
- ✓ Specify the IP address of the machine.
- Specify the IP address of the PC to be used for Remote Panel function, using Web Utilities setting on a PC.
- One of the following browsers is required on the PC. No other hardware or application software is necessary.

Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.02 or higher

Netscape Navigator 7.1 or higher

FireFox 1.0 or higher

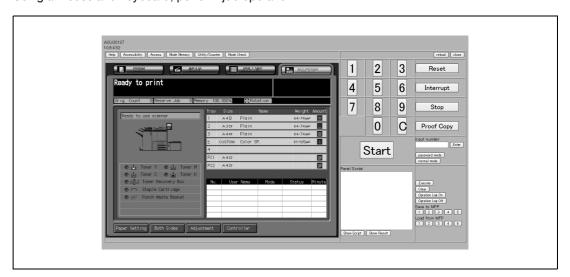
- JavaScript must be active.
- The popup menu such as paper misfeed prompt will not be updated automatically when using Remote Panel. After a long period of inactivity, click [Reload] at the upper corner of the screen to display the current status.
- 1 Start the web browser, then enter the IP address of the main body in the address bar.

 The Web Utilities screen will be displayed.
- Click [Remote Panel] on the Web Utilities screen.



The browser displays control panel and touch panel screen currently displayed on the machine.

3 Using a mouse and keyboard, perform job operation.



Operations performed using remote panel can be recorded and replayed.
 Click [Operation Log On], then start the operation.

To save the operation, click a number key under "Save to MFP."

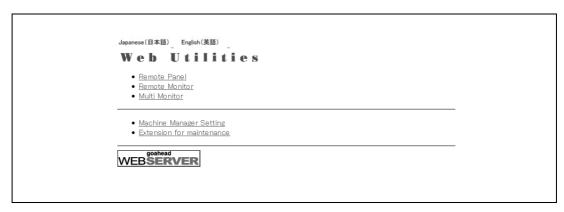
To recall the operation, click the desired number key under "Load from MFP."

To replay the operation, click [Execute].

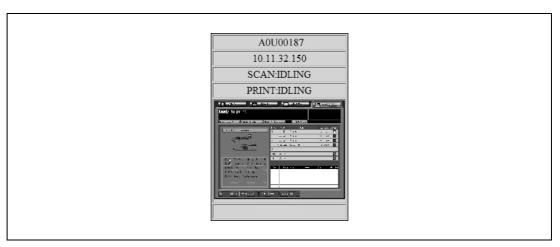


Monitoring copier from browser: Remote monitor

- 1 Start the web browser, then enter the IP address of the main body in the address bar. The Web Utilities screen will be displayed.
- Click [Remote Monitor] on the Web Utilities screen.



The state of the machine, touch panel screen, and job condition will be displayed.



Clicking the touch panel screen on the Remote Monitor will display the Remote Panel in an exclusive window to allow the machine operation from PC.



Note

The background color of the Remote Monitor varies according to the state of the machine.

Green: IDLING, WARMUP, ADJUSTMENT

Blue: OPERATING Yellow: JAM Red: SC



Detail

For details of the Remote Panel, see page 13-15.

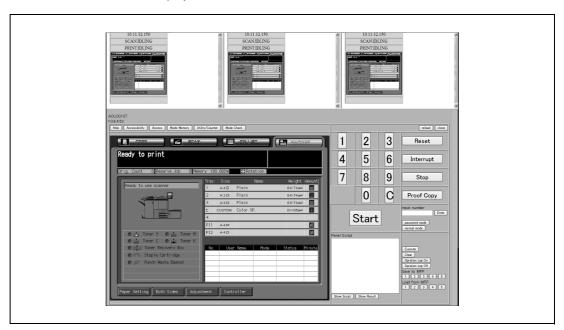
13-16 bizhub PRO C5501

Monitoring copier from browser: Multi monitor

- Start the web browser, then enter the IP address of the main body in the address bar. The Web Utilities screen will be displayed.
- Click [Multi Monitor] on the Web Utilities screen.



The state, touch panel screen, and job condition of up to 10 machines are displayed in tile view. The Remote Panel will also be displayed in the same browser.



Clicking the touch panel screen on the desired Remote Monitor displayed in the browser will display the Remote Panel of the selected machine to allow its operation from PC.



Note

The background color of the Remote Monitor varies according to the state of the machine.

Green: IDLING, WARMUP, ADJUSTMENT

Blue: OPERATING Yellow: JAM Red: SC



Detail

For details of the Remote Panel, see page 13-15.

14 Job management

14 Job management

14.1 Overview of job list screen

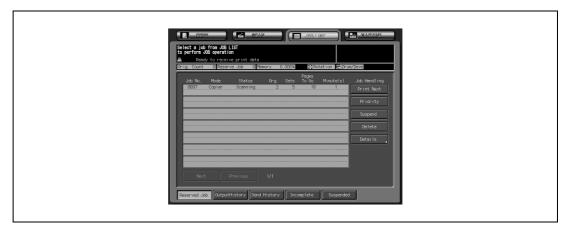
The Job List Screen allows you to check/operate the following items.

- Reserved job
- Output History
- Send History
- Incomplete
- Suspended (The letters on the key turn red if any suspended job remains.)

The jobs referred here include printer jobs and scanner jobs.

Follow the procedure below to display the Job List Screen.

- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen.
 The Job List Screen will be displayed.
- 2 Touch the desired key at the bottom of the screen.



- See the following pages for details of each subsequent screen.
- Touch other tab key to exit the Job List Screen.

14.2 Job operation on job list screen

This section describes how to check and operate the jobs on the Job List Screen.

14.2.1 To check/control reserved jobs

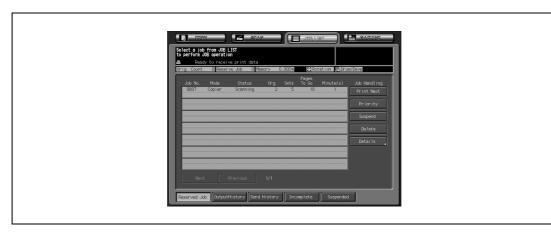
Use this function to display all the reserve jobs as a list.

The list includes following information.

- Job No.: consecutive numbers of both copy and print jobs
- User Name: user who transmitted the job
- Mode: Copy or Printer
- Status: Printing or Reserved (current status of the job)
- Sheets: max. 4-digit page count
- Sets: max. 4-digit set count
- Pages To Go: max. 4-digit pages to be output (Sheets × Sets = Pages To Go)
- Minute(s): time required for completing each job (minute)

Follow the procedure below to check the settings, change the output order, and suspend/delete/stop reserved jobs.

- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen, then touch [Reserved Job] if not highlighted.
- Check the status of the reserved jobs.
 - Touch [Next] to scroll, if 8 or more jobs are entered.



3 Select the desired job, then select the job operation.



Reminder

This will not function if printing operation has already been started for the selected job.

To specify the next job to be printed

→ Touch to highlight the desired reserve job key, then touch [Print Next].

The highlighted reserve job will be moved just under the current print job.

To change the order of jobs

→ Touch to highlight the desired reserve job key, then touch [Priority].

The highlighted job will be advanced by one in printing order unless the job preceding the selected one is already in progress.

If printing order cannot be changed for the selected job, a message will be displayed for information.

To suspend reserve job

→ Touch to highlight the desired reserve job key, then touch [Suspend].

Printing operation for the selected job will be suspended and kept stored in memory.

In this case, the letters [Suspended] on the key at the bottom of the screen will turn red to prompt you that a suspended job remains in the machine. Touch [Suspended] to resume printing operation. See page 14-8 for details.

14-4 bizhub PRO C5501

To clear reserve job

- → Touch to highlight the desired reserve job key, then touch [Delete].
 - Touch [Yes] on the popup menu to clear the selected job.

All the data of the selected job will be cleared.

To check the settings of reserve job

- → Touch to highlight the desired reserve job key, then touch [Details].
 - Check the settings of the selected job on the screen. Touch [Close] to return to the Job List Screen.

14.2.2 To display output history

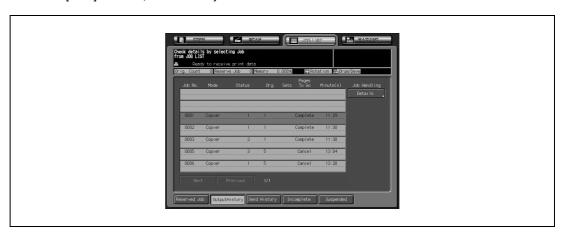
Use this function to display output history as a list.

The list includes following information.

- Job No.: consecutive numbers of both copy and print jobs
- User Name: user who transmitted the job
- Mode: Copy or Printer
- Sheets: max. 4-digit page count
- Sets: max. 4-digit set count
- Result: Complete or Cancel
- Time: time when output operation was executed

Follow the procedure below to check the settings of output jobs.

- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen, then touch [Output History].
- 2 Check the status of the output jobs.
 - Touch [Next] to scroll, if 8 or more jobs are entered.



3 Touch the desired job key, then touch [Details].

Detailed settings of the selected job will be displayed.

Touch [Close] to return to the previous screen.

14.2.3 To display send history

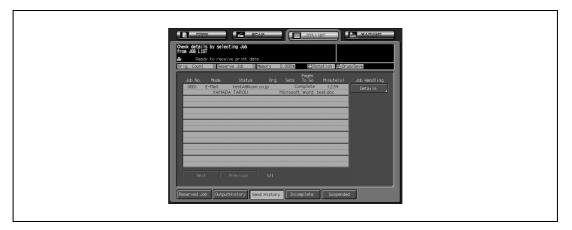
Use this function to display send history as a list.

The list includes following information.

- Job No.: consecutive numbers of both copy and print jobs
- User Name: user who transmitted the job
- Mode: E-Mail / FTP / SMB / HDD
- Address: address to which the data was transmitted
- Result: Complete or Cancel
- Time: time when data transmission was executed

Follow the procedure below to check the settings of transmitted jobs.

- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen, then touch [Send History].
- 2 Check the status of the transmitted jobs.
 - Touch [Next] to scroll, if 8 or more jobs are entered.



3 Touch the desired job key, then touch [Details].

Detailed settings of the selected job will be displayed. Touch [Close] to return to the previous screen.

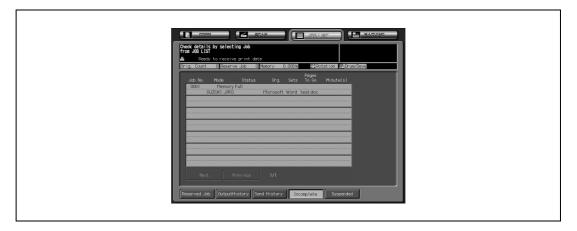
14-6 bizhub PRO C5501

14.2.4 To check incomplete jobs

Use this function to display Incomplete jobs as a list.

The list includes following information.

- Job No.: consecutive numbers of both copy and print jobs
- User Name: user who transmitted the job
- Cause: Memory Full, Cancel, etc.(cause for which the job was not completed)
- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen, then touch [Incomplete].
- Check the status of the incomplete jobs.
 - Touch [Next] to scroll, if 8 or more jobs are entered.



14.2.5 To check/operate suspended jobs

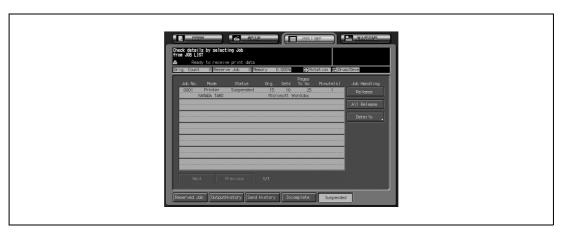
Use this function to display all suspended jobs as a list.

The list includes following information.

- Job No.: consecutive numbers of both copy and print jobs
- User Name: user who transmitted the job
- Mode: Copy or Printer
- Status: Suspended or Printing (current status of the job)
- Sheets: max. 4-digit page count
- Sets: max. 4-digit set count
- Pages To Go: max. 4-digit pages to be output (Sheets × Sets = Pages To Go)
- Minute(s): time required for completing each job (minute)

Follow the procedure below to check the settings of each job and release/collectively release the suspended jobs.

- Touch [JOB LIST] tab on the Copy Screen, then touch [Suspended].
 - The letters Suspended on the key appears red to prompt you that a suspended job remains in the machine.
- Check the status of the suspended jobs.
 - Touch [Next] to scroll, if 8 or more jobs are entered.



3 Select the desired job, then select the job operation.

To output suspended job

- → Touch to highlight the desired job key, then touch [Release].

 The selected job will be output according to the current printing order.
 - To check the printing order, touch [Reserved Job] to display the reserved job list.

To release all suspended jobs

→ Touch [All Release], then touch [Yes] on the popup menu. All the data of suspended jobs will be cleared.

To check the settings of suspended job

- → Touch to highlight the desired job key, then touch [Details].
 - Check the settings of the selected job on the screen. Touch [Close] to return to the Job List Screen.

14-8 bizhub PRO C5501

Index

15 Index

Numerics	Cleaning the machine 6-3			
1.000 magnification mode <i>9-19</i>	Cleaning the original glass 6-3			
2 in 1 <i>11-14</i>	Clear key 8-3			
4 in 1 <i>11-14</i>	Clearing mishandled paper 5-5			
8 in 1 <i>11-15</i>	CMYK model 10-3			
Α.	CMYK value 10-35			
A	Collate 12-6, 12-15			
About colors 10-3	Collate/uncollate output to the secondary (sub) tray			
Access key 8-3	<i>12-11</i> , <i>12-20</i>			
Accessibility 13-13	Color adjustment 10-3			
Accessibility key 8-4	Color balance 10-35			
Actions in response to troubles 1-27	Color copy quality 10-5			
Adding toner 4-13	Color mode <i>9-18</i>			
ADF 2-3	Combine originals 11-14			
ADF guide cover 6-3	Compression 10-33			
ADF originals <i>3-10</i>	Consumables 1-27			
Advanced information 13-3	Contrast 10-11, 10-29			
Application functions 11-3	Control panel 8-3			
Applying filters 10-11	Controlling copier from browser 13-14			
Auto low power 2-13	Conveyance fixing unit 2-4			
Auto paper select 9-31	Copy 11-62			
Auto reset 2-12	Copy count 6-5			
Auto shut-off 2-14	Copy density 10-13			
Auto tray switch function 3-8	Copy protect 11-62			
Auto zoom 9-22	Copy screen 8-5			
Automatic document feeder 2-3	Cover sheet feeding 12-27			
Automatic exposure 10-13	Custom <i>9-12</i>			
Available features 1-17	Cyan (C) 10-8			
В	D			
Background 10-15	Data LED 8-4			
Before successive holidays 1-28	Date/time 11-56			
Bind direction 9-3	Density level 10-13			
Binding direction 12-5	Detailed setting in stamp/watermark 11-64			
Black (K) 10-8	Direction 9-5			
Black print counter 2-4	Disposing punch waste 4-23			
Blue (B) 10-7	Dither (error diffusion) method 10-9			
Book copy 11-22	Dot screen 10-9, 10-33			
Booklet pagination 11-17	E			
Bookmark key 11-4, 13-4				
Brightness 10-6, 10-25	Energy Star 1-5			
Brightness (B) 10-4	Enlarge/reduce 9-21			
B-side prevent 10-17	Exchanging toner recovery box 4-16			
Built-in stamp 11-50	F			
Bypass tray 4-6	Face down 12-7, 12-16			
C	Face up 12-7, 12-16			
Call for service screen 5-3	Finisher FS-520 <i>12-6</i>			
Caution notations and labels 1-33	Finisher FS-607 <i>2-5</i> , <i>12-15</i>			
Chapters 11-11	Fixing pressure 9-43			
Chart adjustment screen <i>9-42</i>	Fixing unit <i>2-4</i> , <i>9-43</i>			
Checking copy count 6-5	Fold & Staple 12-22			
A 1.7 2	Folding mode tray 2-5			

For EU member states only 1-21 Maintenance 6-3 Frame center erase 11-39 Manually conserving energy 2-15 Front door 2-4 Memory overflow 5-10 Full-auto 2-12 Memory overflow in current job 5-10 Mixed 9-9 G Mode check 13-3 General copy operation 8-8 Mode check key 8-3 Glossy 10-12, 10-37 Mode memory 13-8 GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE 1-6 Mode memory key 8-4 Green (G) 10-7 Modifying colors 10-5 Grounding 1-25 Multi half fold 12-22 Multi monitor 13-17 н Multi tri-fold 12-23 Help key 8-4 Multi-page enlargement 11-29 Help mode 13-12 Munsell color system 10-4 Help screen 13-12 Hole-punch 12-14, 12-26 HSB model 10-4 Neg./positive reverse 11-33 HSB value 10-21 Non-image area erase 11-31 Hue 10-6, 10-21 Non-sort 12-6, 12-15 Hue (H) 10-4 Non-sort/collate 12-7, 12-16 Non-sort/collate/uncollate output to the primary (main) tray 12-8, 12-17 Image centering 11-42 Image distinction level 10-10, 10-31 Image overlay 11-67 Operating environment 1-39 Image repeat 11-34 Operation precautions 1-39 Image/type 9-7 Option specifications 7-5 Incomplete job 14-7 Original cover 6-3 Inconformity in paper setting 5-9 Original information 3-9 Insert image 11-19 Original setting 9-3 Insert sheet 11-5 Output applications 12-3 Installation 1-26 Output history 14-5 Interrupt key 8-3 Output tray 12-3 Interrupt mode 13-7 Page margin 11-43, 11-46 Job list screen 14-3 Page no. 11-54 Job management 14-3 Page space 11-45 Paper and original information 3-3 Paper indicator 4-3 Keypad 8-3 Paper information 3-3 Paper inserter PI-502 2-7, 12-27 Large capacity unit LU-202 2-8 Paper misfeed 5-7 Laser safety 1-30 Paper setting 9-30, 9-33 Legal restrictions on copying 1-20 Paper size 3-6 Limited use of the copier in trouble 5-4 Paper tray/exit tray capacity 3-5 Line screen 10-9, 10-33 Paper weight 3-3 Please call service 5-3 Loading paper 4-3 Loading tabbed sheets 4-10 PM icon 6-7 Positioning the original 8-11 M Positioning the original in mixed mode 8-12 Machine configuration 2-3 Positioning the original in Z-folded mode 8-13 Machine status screen 8-7 Positioning the original on original glass 8-13 Magenta (M) 10-8 Power cord 1-23 Main body specifications 7-3 Power LED 8-4 Main power switch 2-4, 2-10 Power off/on screen 5-12

15-4 bizhub PRO C5501

Index

Start key 8-3 Power plug 1-25 Power save key 8-4 Stop key 8-3 Power save LED 2-13 Stop/resume the job in process 8-17 Power source 1-24, 1-39 Storage of copies 1-39 Storing job conditions 13-8 Preset zoom 9-21 Preventive maintenance 6-7 Sub power switch 2-3, 2-10 Primary (main) tray 12-6, 12-15 Suspended job 14-8 Primary (main) tray (Finisher) 2-5 Print quantity 8-14 Tab paper 9-15 Program job 11-26 Thickness 9-11 Program overlay 11-69 To exit auto low power 2-14 Proof copy 13-6 To exit auto shut-off 2-14 Proof copy key 8-3, 13-5, 13-6 Toner access door 2-3 Punch 12-13, 12-25 Toner recovery box door 2-3 Punch waste basket indicator 4-23 Toner recovery box indicator 4-16 Punching file holes *12-13*, *12-25* Total counter 2-4 R Touch panel 8-4 Recalling previous job settings 13-11 Tray empty 5-7 Recalling stored job settings 13-10 Troubleshooting 5-3 Red (R) 10-7 Troubleshooting tips 5-13 Reduce & Shift 11-46 Turning on/off the power 2-10 Regulation notices 1-29 U Remote monitor 13-16 Uncollate 12-6, 12-7, 12-15, 12-16 Remote panel 13-14, 13-15 Unsuitable ADF originals 3-9 Replenishing staples 4-18 User authentication 2-17 Reproducing images 10-9 Using Finisher FS-520/FS-607 manually 12-28 Reserve job 9-45 Utility menu screen 6-5 Reserved job 14-4 Utility/Counter key 8-3 Reset key 8-3 RGB model 10-3 RGB value 10-19 Ventilation 1-26 Rotation 9-32 W Wake-up screen 2-10 Safety information 1-22 Watermark 11-58 Saturation 10-4, 10-6, 10-23 Web browser 13-14 Screen type 10-33 Weekly timer 2-15 Secondary (sub) tray 12-7, 12-16 When moving the machine 1-28 Secondary (sub) tray (Finisher) 2-5 Selecting glossy 10-37 Yellow (Y) 10-8 Send history 14-6 Separate scan mode 9-16 7 Set numbering (Stamp) 11-52 Z-folded 9-10 Set numbering (Watermark) 11-60 Zoom 9-19 Setting job during warmup 8-15 Zoom (individual) 9-20 Sharpness 10-11, 10-27 Zoom (proportional) 9-20 Shift 11-43 Simplex/duplex setting 9-23 Space requirements 1-36 Stamp/image overlay 11-48 Standard/optional equipment 2-9 Staple 12-6, 12-15 Staple cartridge supply indicator 4-20 Stapling output to the primary (main) tray 12-9,

bizhub PRO C5501 15-5

12-18